

## SDA 55xx TVText Pro

Edition July 27, 2001  
6251-556-1DS

 **MICRONAS**

## Contents

| Page      | Section   | Title   |
|-----------|-----------|---|
| <b>8</b>  | <b>1.</b> | <b>Overview</b>   |
| 8         | 1.1.      | Preface   |
| 8         | 1.2.      | Organization of this Document                             |
| 8         | 1.3.      | Related Documentation                                     |
| 8         | 1.4.      | Introduction  |
| 9         | 1.5.      | Features  |
| 9         | 1.5.1.    | General   |
| 9         | 1.5.2.    | External Crystal and Programmable Clock Speed             |
| 10        | 1.5.3.    | Microcontroller Features                                  |
| 10        | 1.5.4.    | Memory  |
| 10        | 1.5.5.    | Display Features  |
| 10        | 1.5.6.    | Acquisition Features                                      |
| 10        | 1.5.7.    | Ports   |
| <b>13</b> | <b>2.</b> | <b>Package and Pinning</b>                                |
| 13        | 2.1.      | Pin Functions (ROM and ROMless Version)                   |
| 16        | 2.2.      | Additional Pins or Functions for ROMless Version          |
| 18        | 2.3.      | Port Alternate Functions                                  |
| 19        | 2.4.      | Pin Configuration PSDIP52-2 (ROM-Version) (top view)      |
| 20        | 2.5.      | Pin Configuration PMQFP64-1 (ROM-Version) (top view)      |
| 21        | 2.6.      | Pin Configuration PMQFP100-2 (ROMless Version) (top view) |
| 22        | 2.7.      | Pin Configuration PLCC84-2 (ROMless Version) (top view)   |
| <b>23</b> | <b>3.</b> | <b>SFR Overview</b>                                       |
| 28        | 3.1.      | Additional Registers                                      |
| <b>30</b> | <b>4.</b> | <b>Clock System</b>                                       |
| 30        | 4.1.      | General Function  |
| 30        | 4.2.      | System Clock  |
| 31        | 4.3.      | Pixel Clock   |
| 31        | 4.4.      | Register Description                                      |
| <b>33</b> | <b>5.</b> | <b>Slicer and Acquisition</b>                             |
| 33        | 5.1.      | General Function  |
| 33        | 5.2.      | Slicer Architecture                                       |
| 34        | 5.2.1.    | Distortion Processing                                     |
| 34        | 5.2.2.    | Data Separation   |
| 34        | 5.3.      | H/V-Synchronization                                       |
| 34        | 5.4.      | Acquisition Interface                                     |
| 35        | 5.4.1.    | FC-Check  |
| 35        | 5.4.2.    | Interrupts  |
| 35        | 5.4.3.    | VBI Buffer and Memory Organization                        |
| 37        | 5.5.      | Register Description                                      |
| 38        | 5.5.1.    | RAM Registers   |
| 46        | 5.5.2.    | Recommended Parameter Settings                            |

---

**Contents, continued**

| <b>Page</b> | <b>Section</b> | <b>Title</b>  |
|-------------|----------------|---|
| <b>47</b>   | <b>6.</b>      | <b>Microcontroller</b>                                |
| 47          | 6.1.           | Architecture  |
| 47          | 6.1.1.         | CPU-Hardware  |
| 47          | 6.1.1.1.       | Instruction Decoder                                   |
| 47          | 6.1.1.2.       | Program Control Section                               |
| 47          | 6.1.1.3.       | Internal Data RAM                                     |
| 47          | 6.1.1.4.       | Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU)                           |
| 48          | 6.1.1.5.       | Boolean Processor                                     |
| 48          | 6.1.1.6.       | Program Status Word Register (PSW)                    |
| 49          | 6.1.1.7.       | Stack Pointer (SP)                                    |
| 49          | 6.1.1.8.       | Data Pointer Register (DPTR)                          |
| 49          | 6.1.2.         | CPU Timing  |
| 50          | 6.1.3.         | Addressing Modes                                      |
| 50          | 6.1.3.1.       | Register Addressing                                   |
| 50          | 6.1.3.2.       | Direct Addressing                                     |
| 50          | 6.1.3.3.       | Register-indirect Addressing                          |
| 50          | 6.1.3.4.       | Immediate Addressing                                  |
| 50          | 6.1.3.5.       | Base Register plus Index Register-indirect Addressing |
| 51          | 6.2.           | Ports and I/O-Pins                                    |
| 53          | 6.3.           | Instruction Set                                       |
| 53          | 6.3.1.         | Notes on Data Addressing Modes                        |
| 53          | 6.3.2.         | Notes on Program Addressing Modes                     |
| 54          | 6.3.3.         | Instruction Set Description                           |
| 59          | 6.3.4.         | Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order              |
| <b>68</b>   | <b>7.</b>      | <b>Interrupts</b>                                     |
| 68          | 7.1.           | Interrupt System                                      |
| 68          | 7.2.           | Interrupt Sources                                     |
| 69          | 7.3.           | Overview  |
| 70          | 7.4.           | Enabling Interrupts                                   |
| 70          | 7.4.1.         | Interrupt Enable Registers (IEN0, IEN1, IEN2, IEN3)   |
| 72          | 7.5.           | Interrupt Source Registers                            |
| 74          | 7.6.           | Interrupt Priority                                    |
| 75          | 7.6.1.         | Interrupt Priority Registers (IP0 IP1)                |
| 76          | 7.7.           | Interrupt Vectors                                     |
| 77          | 7.8.           | Interrupt and Memory Extension                        |
| 77          | 7.9.           | Interrupt Handling                                    |
| 77          | 7.10.          | Interrupt Latency                                     |
| 77          | 7.11.          | Interrupt Flag Clear                                  |
| 77          | 7.12.          | Interrupt Return                                      |
| 77          | 7.13.          | Interrupt Nesting                                     |
| 78          | 7.14.          | External Interrupts                                   |
| 78          | 7.15.          | Extension of Standard 8051 Interrupt Logic            |
| 79          | 7.16.          | Interrupt Task Function                               |

## Contents, continued

| Page      | Section    | Title  |
|-----------|------------|--|
| <b>80</b> | <b>8.</b>  | <b>Power Saving Modes</b>                        |
| 80        | 8.1.       | Power-Save Mode Registers                        |
| 83        | 8.2.       | Idle Mode  |
| 83        | 8.3.       | Power-Down Mode                                  |
| 83        | 8.4.       | Power-Save Mode                                  |
| 83        | 8.5.       | Slow-Down Mode                                   |
| <b>84</b> | <b>9.</b>  | <b>Reset</b>                                     |
| 84        | 9.1.       | Reset Sources                                    |
| 84        | 9.2.       | Reset Filtering                                  |
| 84        | 9.3.       | Reset Duration                                   |
| 84        | 9.4.       | Registers  |
| 84        | 9.5.       | Functional Blocks                                |
| 84        | 9.6.       | RAMs   |
| 84        | 9.7.       | Analog Blocks                                    |
| 84        | 9.8.       | Processor  |
| 84        | 9.9.       | Ports  |
| 84        | 9.10.      | Initialization Phase                             |
| 84        | 9.10.1.    | Acquisition                                      |
| 84        | 9.10.2.    | Display  |
| <b>85</b> | <b>10.</b> | <b>Memory Organization</b>                       |
| 85        | 10.1.      | Program Memory                                   |
| 86        | 10.2.      | Internal Data RAM                                |
| 86        | 10.2.1.    | CPU RAM  |
| 86        | 10.2.2.    | Extended Data RAM (XRAM)                         |
| 86        | 10.3.      | Memory Extension                                 |
| 86        | 10.3.1.    | Memory Extension Registers                       |
| 87        | 10.3.1.1.  | Memory Extension Register 1                      |
| 87        | 10.3.1.2.  | Memory Extension Register 2                      |
| 87        | 10.3.1.3.  | Memory Extension Register 3                      |
| 88        | 10.3.1.4.  | Memory Extension Stack Pointer                   |
| 88        | 10.3.2.    | Reset Value                                      |
| 88        | 10.3.3.    | Instructions on which Memory Extension would act |
| 88        | 10.3.4.    | Program Memory Banking (LJMP)                    |
| 89        | 10.3.5.    | MOVC Handling                                    |
| 89        | 10.3.6.    | CALLs and Interrupts                             |
| 89        | 10.3.7.    | Stack Full                                       |
| 89        | 10.3.8.    | Timing   |
| 89        | 10.3.9.    | Interfacing Extended Memory                      |
| 89        | 10.3.10.   | Interfacing Extended Stack                       |
| 89        | 10.3.11.   | Application Examples                             |
| 90        | 10.3.12.   | ROM and ROMless Version                          |

---

**Contents, continued**

| <b>Page</b> | <b>Section</b> | <b>Title</b>   |
|-------------|----------------|--|
| <b>91</b>   | <b>11.</b>     | <b>UART</b>  |
| 91          | 11.1.          | Modes  |
| 91          | 11.1.1.        | Mode 0   |
| 91          | 11.1.2.        | Mode 1   |
| 91          | 11.1.3.        | Mode 2   |
| 91          | 11.1.4.        | Mode 3   |
| 92          | 11.2.          | Multiprocessor Communication                                   |
| <b>93</b>   | <b>12.</b>     | <b>General Purpose Timers/Counters</b>                         |
| 93          | 12.1.          | Timer/Counter 0: Mode Selection                                |
| 93          | 12.1.1.        | Timer/Counter 1: Mode Selection                                |
| 94          | 12.1.2.        | Configuring the Timer/Counter Input                            |
| 94          | 12.1.3.        | Timer/Counter Mode Register                                    |
| 95          | 12.1.4.        | Timer/Counter Control Register                                 |
| <b>96</b>   | <b>13.</b>     | <b>Capture Reload Timer</b>                                    |
| 96          | 13.1.          | Input Clock  |
| 96          | 13.2.          | Reset Values   |
| 96          | 13.3.          | Functional Description   |
| 96          | 13.3.1.        | Port Pin   |
| 96          | 13.3.2.        | Slow-Down Mode   |
| 96          | 13.3.3.        | Run  |
| 96          | 13.3.4.        | Overflow   |
| 96          | 13.3.5.        | Modes  |
| 97          | 13.3.6.        | Normal Capture Mode  |
| 97          | 13.3.7.        | Polling Mode   |
| 97          | 13.3.8.        | Capture Mode with Spike Suppression at the Start of a Telegram |
| 97          | 13.3.9.        | First Event  |
| 97          | 13.3.10.       | Second Event   |
| 97          | 13.3.11.       | CRT Interrupt  |
| 98          | 13.3.12.       | Counter Stop   |
| 98          | 13.4.          | Idle and Power-Down Mode                                       |
| 98          | 13.5.          | Registers  |
| <b>101</b>  | <b>14.</b>     | <b>Pulse Width Modulation Unit</b>                             |
| 101         | 14.1.          | Reset Values   |
| 101         | 14.2.          | Input Clock  |
| 101         | 14.3.          | Port Pins  |
| 101         | 14.4.          | Functional Description   |
| 101         | 14.4.1.        | 8-Bit PWM  |
| 102         | 14.4.2.        | 14-Bit PWM   |
| 102         | 14.5.          | Cycle Time   |
| 103         | 14.6.          | Power Down, Idle and Power-Save Mode                           |
| 103         | 14.7.          | Timer  |
| 103         | 14.8.          | Control Registers  |

## Contents, continued

| Page       | Section    | Title  |
|------------|------------|--|
| <b>106</b> | <b>15.</b> | <b>Watchdog Timer</b>                                    |
| 106        | 15.1.      | Input Clock  |
| 106        | 15.2.      | Starting WDT   |
| 106        | 15.3.      | Refresh  |
| 106        | 15.4.      | WDT Reset  |
| 106        | 15.5.      | Power-Down Mode  |
| 106        | 15.6.      | Time Period  |
| 108        | 15.7.      | WDT as General Purpose Timer                             |
| <b>109</b> | <b>16.</b> | <b>Analog Digital Converter (ADC)</b>                    |
| 109        | 16.1.      | Power Down and Wake Up                                   |
| 109        | 16.2.      | Register Description                                     |
| <b>115</b> | <b>17.</b> | <b>Sync System</b>                                       |
| 115        | 17.1.      | General Description                                      |
| 115        | 17.1.1.    | Screen Resolution  |
| 117        | 17.1.2.    | Sync Interrupts  |
| 117        | 17.2.      | Register Description                                     |
| <b>127</b> | <b>18.</b> | <b>Display</b>   |
| 127        | 18.1.      | Display Features   |
| 127        | 18.2.      | Display Memory   |
| 129        | 18.3.      | Parallel Character Attributes                            |
| 130        | 18.3.1.    | Access of Characters                                     |
| 130        | 18.3.1.1.  | Address Range from 0 <sub>d</sub> to 767 <sub>d</sub>    |
| 130        | 18.3.1.2.  | Address Range from 768 <sub>d</sub> to 1023 <sub>d</sub> |
| 132        | 18.3.2.    | Flash  |
| 132        | 18.3.2.1.  | Flash for ROM Characters and 1-Bit DRCS Characters       |
| 133        | 18.3.2.2.  | Flash for 2-Bit and 4-Bit DRCS Characters                |
| 133        | 18.3.3.    | Character Individual Double Height                       |
| 134        | 18.3.4.    | Character Individual Double Width                        |
| 135        | 18.4.      | Global OSD Attributes                                    |
| 139        | 18.4.1.    | Character Display Area Resolution                        |
| 139        | 18.4.2.    | Cursor   |
| 143        | 18.4.3.    | Border Color   |
| 143        | 18.4.4.    | Full Screen Double Height                                |
| 145        | 18.4.5.    | Flash Rate Control                                       |
| 146        | 18.4.6.    | Transparency of Boxes                                    |
| 149        | 18.4.7.    | CLUT   |
| 155        | 18.4.7.1.  | CLUT Access for ROM Characters/1-bit DRCS Characters     |
| 155        | 18.4.7.2.  | CLUT Access for 2-Bit DRCS Characters                    |
| 155        | 18.4.7.3.  | CLUT Access for 4-Bit DRCS Characters                    |
| 155        | 18.4.8.    | Character Resolution                                     |
| 156        | 18.4.9.    | Shadowing  |
| 158        | 18.4.10.   | Progressive Scan   |
| 158        | 18.5.      | DRCS Characters  |
| 158        | 18.5.1.    | Memory Organization of DRCS Characters                   |
| 162        | 18.6.      | Memory Organization                                      |

---

**Contents, continued**

| <b>Page</b> | <b>Section</b> | <b>Title</b>                              |
|-------------|----------------|---|
| 163         | 18.6.1.        | Character Display Area                    |
| 164         | 18.6.2.        | CLUT Area                                 |
| 164         | 18.6.3.        | Global Display Word/Cursor                |
| 164         | 18.6.4.        | 1-Bit/2-Bit/4-Bit DRCS Character          |
| 164         | 18.6.5.        | Overview on the SFR Registers             |
| 166         | 18.7.          | TVText Pro Characters                     |
| <b>171</b>  | <b>19.</b>     | <b>D/A Converter</b>                      |
| 171         | 19.1.          | Register Description                      |
| <b>173</b>  | <b>20.</b>     | <b>Electrical Characteristics</b>         |
| 173         | 20.1.          | Absolute Maximum Ratings                  |
| 173         | 20.2.          | Operating Range                           |
| 174         | 20.3.          | DC Characteristics                        |
| 179         | 20.4.          | Timings                                   |
| 179         | 20.4.1.        | Sync                                      |
| 180         | 20.4.2.        | Program Memory Read Cycle                 |
| 181         | 20.4.3.        | Data Memory Read Cycle                    |
| 182         | 20.4.4.        | Data Memory Write Cycle                   |
| 183         | 20.4.5.        | BLANK/ COR                                |
| 184         | 20.5.          | Application Diagram                       |
| 185         | 20.6.          | Package Outlines                          |
| <b>188</b>  | <b>21.</b>     | <b>List of Changes since last Edition</b> |
| <b>189</b>  | <b>22.</b>     | <b>Data Sheet History</b>                 |

## TVText Pro

### 1. Overview

#### 1.1. Preface

TVText Pro is a 8-bit controller based on a enhanced 8051 core with embedded teletext, On screen Display and TV controller functions. TVText Pro can be used for a wide range of TV and OSD applications. This document provides complete reference information of the TVText Pro system.

#### 1.2. Organization of this Document

- Chapter 1, **Overview**: Gives a general description of the product and lists the key features.
- Chapter 2, **Package and Pinning**: Lists pin locations with associated signals, categorizes signals according to function, and describes signals.
- Chapter 3, **SFR Overview**: List of the registers.
- Chapter 4, **Clock System**: Describes Clock system and it's distribution.
- Chapter 5, **Slicer and Acquisition**: Describes slicer and acquisition interface.
- Chapter 6, **Microcontroller**: Describes microcontroller, instruction set, ports.
- Chapter 7, **Interrupts**: Describes interrupts, priorities, sources, enhancements to standard 8051 interrupt logic.
- Chapter 8, **Power Saving Modes**: Describes the four power saving modes of the device.
- Chapter 9, **Reset**: Describes reset requirements and behavior of the device.
- Chapter 10, **Memory Organization**: Describes internal/external RAM, ROM and Memory extension.
- Chapter 11, **UART**: Describes peripheral UART.
- Chapter 12, **General Purpose Timers/Counters**: Describes peripherals Timer 0 and timer 1.
- Chapter 13, **Capture Reload Timer**: Describes peripheral CRT.
- Chapter 14, **Pulse Width Modulation Unit**: Describes peripheral PWM.
- Chapter 15, **Watchdog Timer**: Describes peripheral Watchdog timer.
- Chapter 16, **Analog to Digital Converter**: Describes ADC functionality.
- Chapter 17, **Sync System**: Screen resolution, sync mechanism.
- Chapter 18, **Display**: Display features, modes and

their usage.

- Chapter 19, **Digital to Analog Converter**: Describes DAC operation.
- Chapter 20, **Electrical Characteristics**: Lists all important AC and DC Values and the maximum operating conditions of SDA 55xx.
- Chapter 21, **List of changes since last edition**: Provides a list of used terms and abbreviations, their explanation and where to find them in that document and changes since last edition.

#### 1.3. Related Documentation

For easier understanding of this specification it is recommended to read the documentation listed in the following table.

| Document Name | Document Purpose |
|---------------|------------------|
|               |                  |
|               |                  |

#### 1.4. Introduction

The SDA 55xx is a single chip teletext decoder for decoding World System Teletext data as well as Video Programming System (VPS), Program Delivery Control (PDC), and Wide Screen Signalling (WSS) data used for PAL plus transmissions (line 23). The device also supports Closed caption acquisition and decoding.

The device provides an integrated general-purpose, fully 8051-compatible Microcontroller with television specific hardware features. Microcontroller has been enhanced to provide powerful features such as memory banking, data pointers and additional interrupts etc.

The on-chip display unit for displaying Level 1.5 teletext data can also be used for customer defined on-screen displays.

Internal XRAM consists of up to 16 KBytes. Device has an internal ROM of up to 128 KBytes. ROMless versions can access up to 1 MByte of external RAM and ROM.

The SDA 55xx supports a wide range of standards including PAL, NTSC and contains a digital slicer for VPS, WSS, PDC, TTX and Closed Caption, an accelerating acquisition hardware module, a display generator for Level 1.5 TTX data and powerful On screen Display capabilities based on parallel attributes, and Pixel oriented characters (DRCS).



The 8-bit Microcontroller runs at 360 ns. cycle time (min.). Controller with dedicated hardware does most of the internal TTX acquisition processing, transfers data to/from external memory interface and receives/transmits data via I<sup>2</sup>C-firmware user-interface.

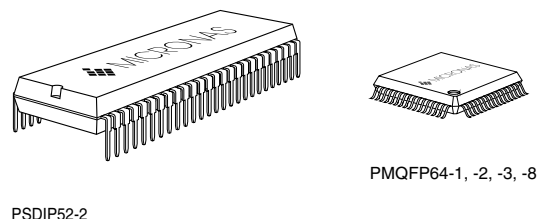
The slicer combined with dedicated hardware stores TTX data in a VBI buffer of 1 Kilobyte. The Microcontroller firmware performs all the acquisition tasks (hamming- and parity-checks, page search and evaluation of header control bits) once per field. Additionally, the firmware can provide high-end Teletext-features like Packet-26-handling, FLOF, TOP and list-pages. The interface to user software is optimized for minimal overhead.

SDA 55xx is realized in 0.25 micron technology with 2.5 V supply voltage and 3.3 V I/O (TTL compatible).

The software and hardware development environment (TEAM) is available to simplify and speed up the development of the software and On Screen Display. **TEAM** stands for: **TVT Expert Application Maker**. It improves the TV controller software quality in following aspects:

- Shorter time to market
- Re-usability
- Target independent development
- Verification and validation before targeting
- General test concept
- Graphical interface design requiring minimum programming and controller know how.
- Modular and open tool chain, configurable by customer.

## 1.5. Features



**Fig. 1–1:** Packages PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1

**Table 1–1:** Types and Packages

| Type                 | Package              |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| TVText Pro (ROM)     | PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1 |
| TVText Pro (ROMless) | PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |

### 1.5.1. General

- Feature selection via special function register
- Simultaneous reception of TTX, VPS, PDC, and WSS (line 23)
- Supply Voltage 2.5 and 3.3 V
- ROM version package PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1
- Romless version package PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2

### 1.5.2. External Crystal and Programmable Clock Speed

- Single external 6 MHz crystal, all necessary clocks are generated internally
- CPU clock speed selectable via special function registers.
- Normal Mode 33.33 MHz CPU clock, Power Save mode 8.33 MHz

## 1.5.3. Microcontroller Features

- 8-bit 8051 instruction set compatible CPU
- 33.33-MHz internal clock (max.)
- 0.360  $\mu$ s (min.) instruction cycle
- Two 16-bit timers
- Watchdog timer
- Capture compare timer for infrared remote control decoding
- Pulse width modulation unit (2 channels 14 bit, 6 channels 8 bit)
- ADC (4 channels, 8 bit)
- UART

## 1.5.4. Memory

- Non-multiplexed 8-bit data and 16 ... 20-bit address bus (ROMless Version)
- Memory banking up to 1 Mbyte (Romless version)
- Up to 128 Kilobyte on Chip Program ROM
- Eight 16-bit data pointer registers (DPTR)
- 256-bytes on-chip Processor Internal RAM (IRAM)
- 128 bytes extended stack memory
- Display RAM and TXT/VPS/PDC/WSS-Acquisition-Buffer directly accessible via MOVX
- UP to 16 KByte on Chip Extended RAM (XRAM) consisting of
  - 1 Kilobyte on-chip ACQ-buffer-RAM (access via MOVX)
  - 1 Kilobyte on-chip extended-RAM (XRAM, access via MOVX) for user software
  - 3 Kilobyte Display Memory

## 1.5.5. Display Features

- ROM Character Set Supports all East and West European Languages in single device
- Mosaic Graphic Character Set
- Parallel Display Attributes
- Single/Double Width/Height of Characters
- Variable Flash Rate
- Programmable Screen Size (25 Rows  $\times$  33 ... 64 Columns)
- Flexible Character Matrixes (H  $\times$  V) 12  $\times$  9 ... 16
- Up to 256 Dynamical Redefinable Characters in standard mode; 1024 Dynamical Redefinable Characters in Enhanced Mode
- CLUT with up to 4096 color combinations

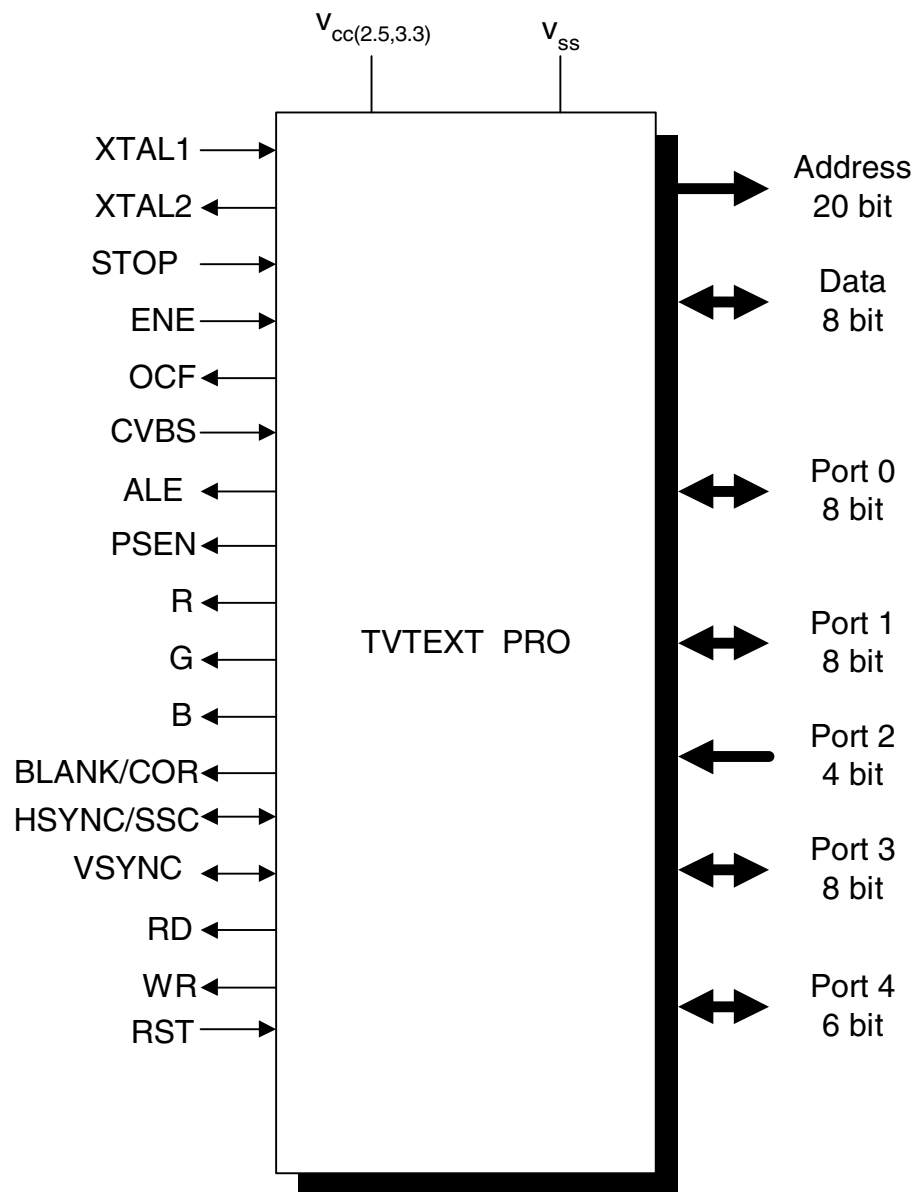
- Up to 16 Colors per DRCS Character
- One out of Eight Colors for Foreground and Background Colors for 1-bit DRCS and ROM Characters
- Shadowing
- Contrast Reduction
- Pixel by Pixel Shiftable Cursor With up to 4 Different Colors
- Support of Progressive Scan and 100 Hz
- 3  $\times$  4 Bits RGB-DACs On-Chip
- Free Programmable Pixel Clock from 10 MHz to 32 MHz
- Pixel Clock Independent from CPU Clock
- Multinorm H/V-Display Synchronization in Master or Slave Mode

## 1.5.6. Acquisition Features

- Multistandard Digital Data Slicer
- Parallel Multi-norm Slicing (TTX, VPS, WSS, CC, G+)
- Four Different Framing Codes Available
- Data Caption only Limited by available Memory
- Programmable VBI-buffer
- Full Channel Data Slicing Supported
- Fully Digital Signal Processing
- Noise Measurement and Controlled Noise Compensation
- Attenuation Measurement and Compensation
- Group Delay Measurement and Compensation
- Exact Decoding of Echo Disturbed Signals

## 1.5.7. Ports

- One 8-bit I/O-port with open drain output and optional I<sup>2</sup>C Bus emulation support (Port 0)
- Two 8-bit multifunction I/O-ports (Port 1, Port 3)
- One 4-bit port working as digital or analog inputs for the ADC (Port 2)
- One 2-bit I/O-port with secondary functions (P4.2, 4.3, 4.7)
- One 4-bit I/O-port with secondary function (P4.0, 4.1, 4.4) Not available in PSDIP52-2)

**Fig. 1–2:** Logic Symbol

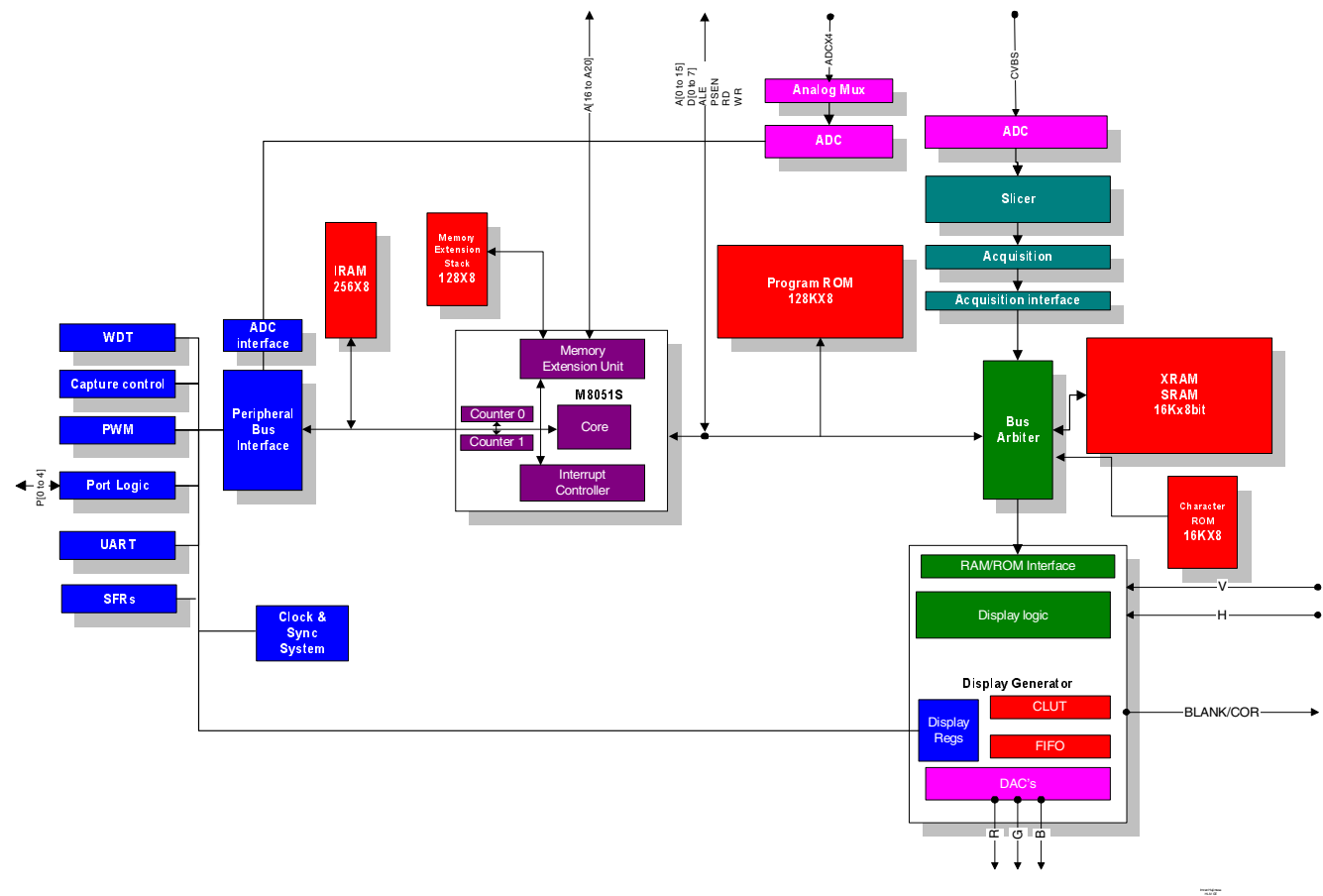


Fig. 1–3: Block Diagram

## 2. Package and Pinning

### 2.1. Pin Functions (ROM and ROMless Version)

| Symbol             | Function  |                      |   |
|--------------------|---|----------------------|---|
| P0.0-P0.7          | Type<br>I/O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                    | Port 0 is a 8-bit open drain bidirectional I/O-port. Port 0 pins that have 1 written to them float; in this state they can be used as high impedance inputs (e.g. for software driven I <sup>2</sup> C Bus support).  |                      |   |
| P1.0-P1.7          | Type<br>I/O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
| PWM                | <p>Port 1 is a 8-bit bidirectional multifunction I/O-port with internal pull-up resistors. Port 1 pins that have 1 written to them are pulled high by the internal pull-up resistors and in that state can be used as inputs.</p> <p>The secondary functions of Port 1 pins are:</p> <p>Port bits P1.0 - P1.5 contain the 6 output channels of the 8-bit pulse width modulation unit.</p> <p>Port bits P1.6 - P1.7 contain the two output channels of the 14-bit pulse width modulation unit.</p>   |                      |   |
| P2.0-P2.3          | Type<br>I   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
| ADC                | <p>Port 2 is a 4-bit input port without pull-up resistors.</p> <p>Port 2 also works as analog input for the 4-channel-ADC.</p>  |                      |   |
| P3.0-P3.7          | Type<br>I/O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
| Alternate function | <p>Port 3 is an 8-bit bidirectional I/O-port with internal pull-up resistors. Port 3 pins that have 1 written to them are pulled high by the internal pull-up resistors and in that state can be used as inputs.</p> <p>To use the secondary functions of Port 3, the corresponding output latch must be programmed to a one (1) for that function to operate. The secondary functions are as follows:</p> <p>P3.0: ODD/EVEN indicate output</p> <p>P3.1: external extra interrupt 0 (<math>\overline{\text{INTX0}}</math>)/UART(TXD)</p> <p>P3.2: interrupt 0 input/timer 0 gate control input (<math>\overline{\text{INT0}}</math>)</p> <p>P3.3: interrupt 1 input/timer 1 gate control input (<math>\overline{\text{INT1}}</math>)</p> <p>P3.4: counter 0 input (T0)</p> <p>P3.5: counter 1 input (T1) or in master mode HS or VCS output.</p> <p>P3.7 external extra interrupt 1 (<math>\overline{\text{INTX1}}</math>)/UART(RXD)</p> <p>Note: P3.6 must not be kept to "0" during reset, otherwise a testmode will be activated.</p> |                      |   |

| Symbol                               | Function   |                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|--|----------------------|---|
| P4.2, P4.3, P4.7                     | Type<br>I/O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | <p>Port 4 is a bidirectional I/O-port with internal pull-up resistors. Port 4 pins that have 1 written to them are pulled high by the internal pull-up resistors and in that state can be used as inputs.</p> <p>Secondary functions</p> <p>P4.2: RD, Read line. This signal is same as the to output of the pin RD available in some packages.</p> <p>P4.3: WR, write line. This signal is same as the output of the pin <math>\overline{WR}</math>, which is only available in some package.</p> <p>P4.7: VS, Vertical sync: ODD/Even, Odd/even field indicator.</p> |                      |   |
| $\overline{RST}$                     | Type<br>I  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | A low level on this pin resets the device. An internal pull-up resistor permits power-on reset using only one external capacitor connected to $V_{SS}$ .   |                      |   |
| $V_{DD3.3}$ , $V_{DD2.5}$ , $V_{SS}$ | Type<br>PS   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | <p><math>V_{DD3.3}</math> Input/output (3.3 V)</p> <p><math>V_{DD2.5}</math> Supply voltage (2.5 V)</p> <p><math>V_{SS}</math> Ground (0 V)</p>  |                      |   |
| $V_{DDA}$ , $V_{SSA}$                | Type<br>PS   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | <p>Supply voltage for analog components.</p> <p>Ground for analog components.</p>  |                      |   |
| CVBS                                 | Type<br>I  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | CVBS input for the acquisition circuit.  |                      |   |
| HS/SC                                | Type<br>I  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|                                      | <p>In slave mode Horizontal sync input or sandcastle input for display synchronization.</p> <p>In master mode HS or VCS output.</p>  |                      |   |

| Symbol    | Function   |                      |   |
|-----------|--|----------------------|---|
| XTAL1     | Type<br>I  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|           | Input of the inverting oscillator amplifier.   |                      |   |
| XTAL2     | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|           | Output of the inverting oscillator amplifier.  |                      |   |
| VS/P4.7   | Type<br>I/O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|           | Vertical sync input/output for display synchronization.<br>Can also be used as digital input P4.7.<br>Furthermore this pin can be selected as an ODD/EVEN indicator alternatively to P3.0. |                      |   |
| R, G, B   | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|           | Red, Green, Blue   |                      |   |
| BLANK/COR | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PSDIP52-2, PMQFP64-1,<br>PMQFP100-2, PLCC84-2 |
|           | Blanking and contrast reduction.   |                      |   |

## 2.2. Additional Pins or Functions for ROMless Version

| Symbol   | Function    |                      |                                       |
|--|-------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A0-A16   | Type<br>O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
| Address bus for external program memory or data RAM  |             |                      |                                       |
| A17 ... A19/<br>P4.0, P4.1, P4.4   | Type<br>I/O | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
| After power-on P4.0, P4.1, P4.4 work as additional address lines A17 ... A19. In port mode, these port lines act as bidirectional I/O-port with internal pull-up resistors. Port pins that have '1' written to them are pulled high by the internal pull-up resistors and in that state can be used as inputs. |             |                      |                                       |
| D0-D7  | Type<br>I/O | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
| Data bus for external memory or data RAM   |             |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{\text{STOP}}$   | Type<br>I   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
| STOP<br>Emulation control line; Driving a low level during the input phase freezes the real time relevant internal peripherals such as timers and interrupt controller.  |             |                      |                                       |
| OCF  | Type<br>O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
| Opcode Fetch<br>Emulation control line; A high level driven by the controller during output phase indicates the beginning of a new instruction.  |             |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{\text{ENE}}$  | Type<br>I   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
| Enable Emulation<br>Only if this pin is set to zero externally, STOP and OCF are operational. ENE has an internal pull-up resistor which switches automatically to non-emulation mode if ENE is not connected.   |             |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$   | Type<br>O   | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
| Control output; indicates a read access to the internal XRAM; can be used for latching data from the data bus into an external data RAM by a MOVX instruction.<br>This signal is also available as P4.2.   |             |                      |                                       |



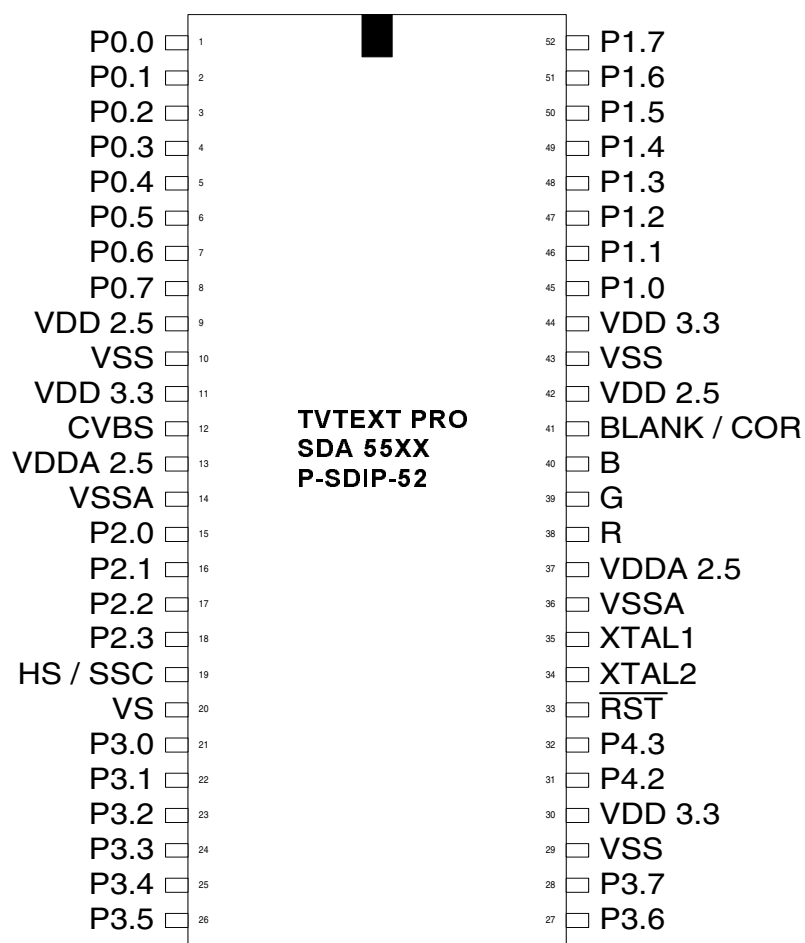
| Symbol             | Function   |                      |                                       |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| $\overline{WR}$    | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
|                    | Control output; indicates a write access to the internal XRAM; can be used as a write strobe for writing data into an external data RAM by a MOVX instruction.<br>This signal is also available as P4.3. |                      |                                       |
| ALE                | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
|                    | Address Latch Enable   |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{PSEN}$  | Type<br>O  | Additional reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
|                    | Program Store Enable<br>is a control output signal which is usually connected to OE input line of the external program memory to enable the data output.   |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{XROM}$  | Type<br>I  | Additional Reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2,<br>PLCC84-2 |
|                    | This pin must be pulled low to access external ROM.  |                      |                                       |
| FL_xx              | Type<br>I  | Additional Reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
|                    | All the pins prefix by FL_ are test pins which must be left open.  |                      |                                       |
| $\overline{EXTIF}$ | Type<br>I  | Additional Reference | Available:<br>PMQFP100-2              |
|                    | This pin must be pulled low to enable ext. memory interface.   |                      |                                       |

## 2.3. Port Alternate Functions

| Port                | I/O | Default Function | Alternate Function 2   |                       | Alternate Function 3    |                |
|---------------------|-----|------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
|                     |     |                  | Toggle                 | Function              | Toggle                  | Function       |
|                     |     |                  | Control bit            | Function              | Control bit             | Function       |
| P0(0-7)             | I/O | Port pin         | –                      | –                     | –                       | –              |
| P1(0)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E0)               | PWM 8 bit channel 0   | –                       | –              |
| P1(1)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E1)               | PWM 8 bit channel 1   | –                       | –              |
| P1(2)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E2)               | PWM 8 bit channel 2   | –                       | –              |
| P1(3)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E3)               | PWM 8 bit channel 3   | –                       | –              |
| P1(4)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E4)               | PWM 8 bit channel 4   | –                       | –              |
| P1(5)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E5)               | PWM 8 bit channel 5   | –                       | –              |
| P1(6)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E6)               | PWM 14 bit channel 0  | –                       | –              |
| P1(7)               | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E7)               | PWM 14 bit channel 1  | –                       | –              |
| P2(0)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD0)            | ADC channel 0         | –                       | –              |
| P2(1)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD1)            | ADC channel 1         | –                       | –              |
| P2(2)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD2)            | ADC channel 2         | –                       | –              |
| P2(3)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD3)            | ADC channel 3         | –                       | –              |
| P3(0)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR0(O_E_P3_0)        | ODD/Even indicator    | –                       | –              |
| P3(1)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | External extra Int 0  | Port output mode        | TXD            |
| P3(2)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | External interrupt 0  | –                       | –              |
| P3(3)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | External interrupt 1  | –                       | –              |
| P3(4)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | Timer/counter 0 input | –                       | –              |
| P3(5)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | Timer/counter 1 input | –                       | –              |
| P3(6)               | I/O | Port pin         | –                      | –                     | –                       | –              |
| P3(7)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode        | External extra Int 1  | Port input mode         | RXD            |
| P4(0) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A17              | CSCR1(A17_P4_0)        | Port pin              | –                       | –              |
| P4(1) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A18              | CSCR1(A18_P4_1)        | Port pin              | –                       | –              |
| P4(2)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR1(ENARW)           | Read signal           | –                       | –              |
| P4(3)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR1(ENARW)           | Write signal          | –                       | –              |
| P4(4) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A19              | CSCR1(A19_P4_4)        | Port pin              | –                       | –              |
| P4(7)               | I/O | Port/VS in       | CSCR0(VS_OE, P4_7_ALT) | VS output             | CSCR0 (VS_OE, P4_7_ALT) | OddEven output |

1) Not available in PSDIP52-2

## 2.4. Pin Configuration PSDIP52-2 (ROM-Version) (top view)



**Fig. 2–1:** PSDIP52-2 (ROM-Version of SDA 55xx)

2.5. Pin Configuration PMQFP64-1 (ROM-Version) (top view)

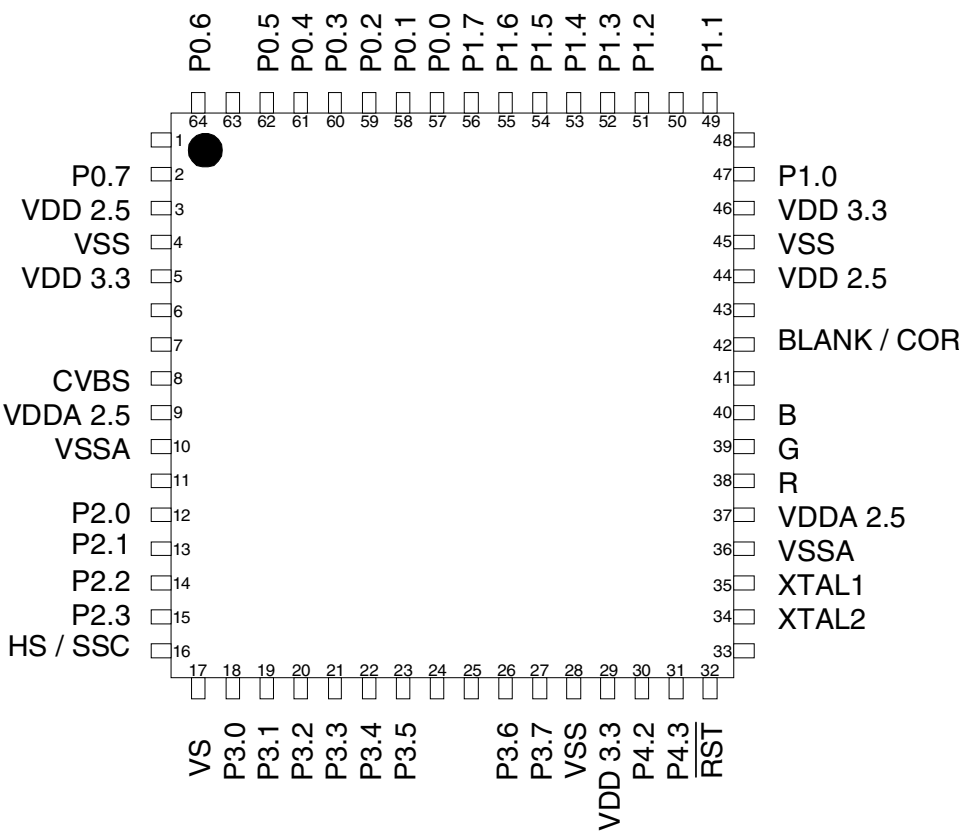


Fig. 2–2: PMQFP64-1 (ROM Version)

## 2.6. Pin Configuration PMQFP100-2 (ROMless Version) (top view)

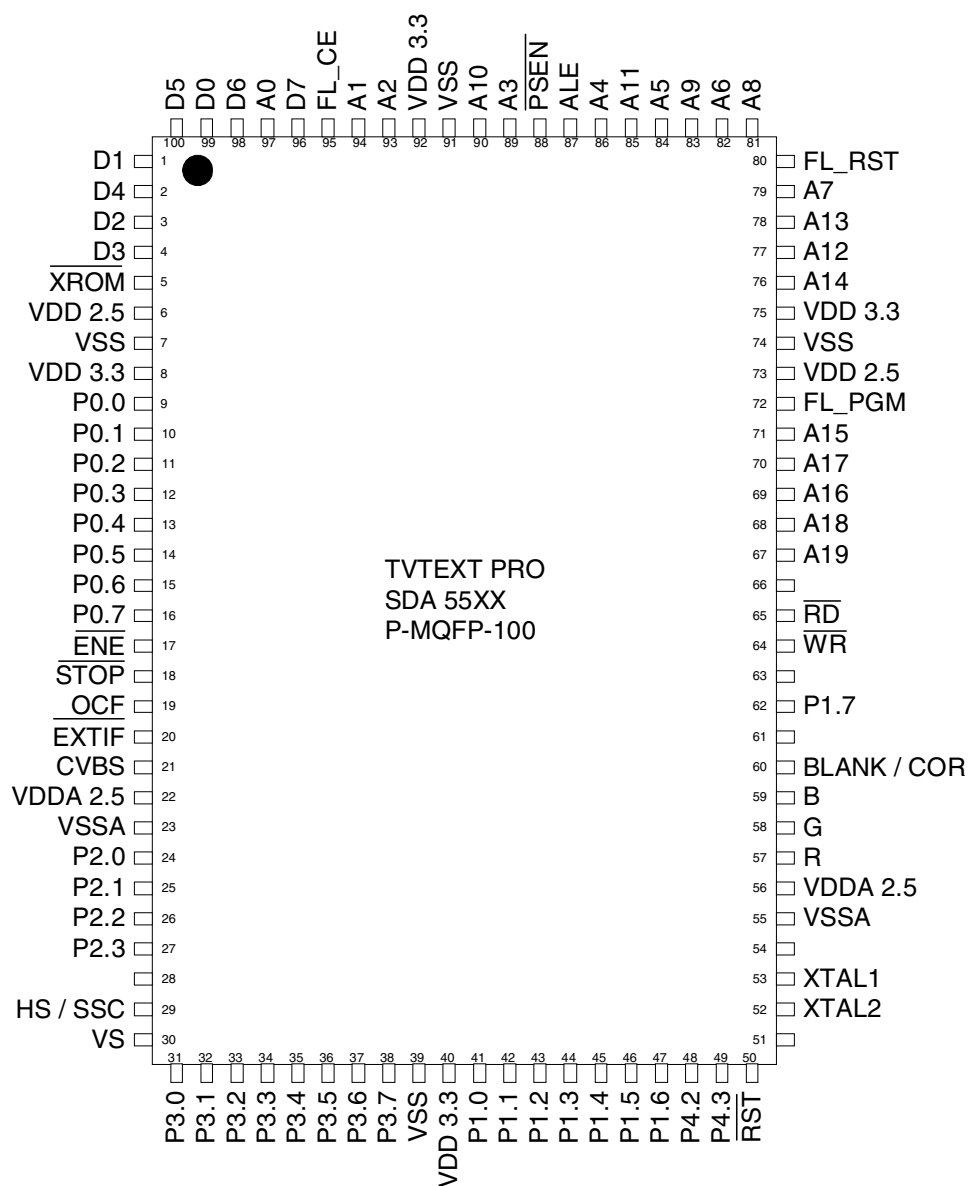


Fig. 2–3: PMQFP100-2 (ROMless Version)

2.7. Pin Configuration PLCC84-2 (ROMless Version) (top view)

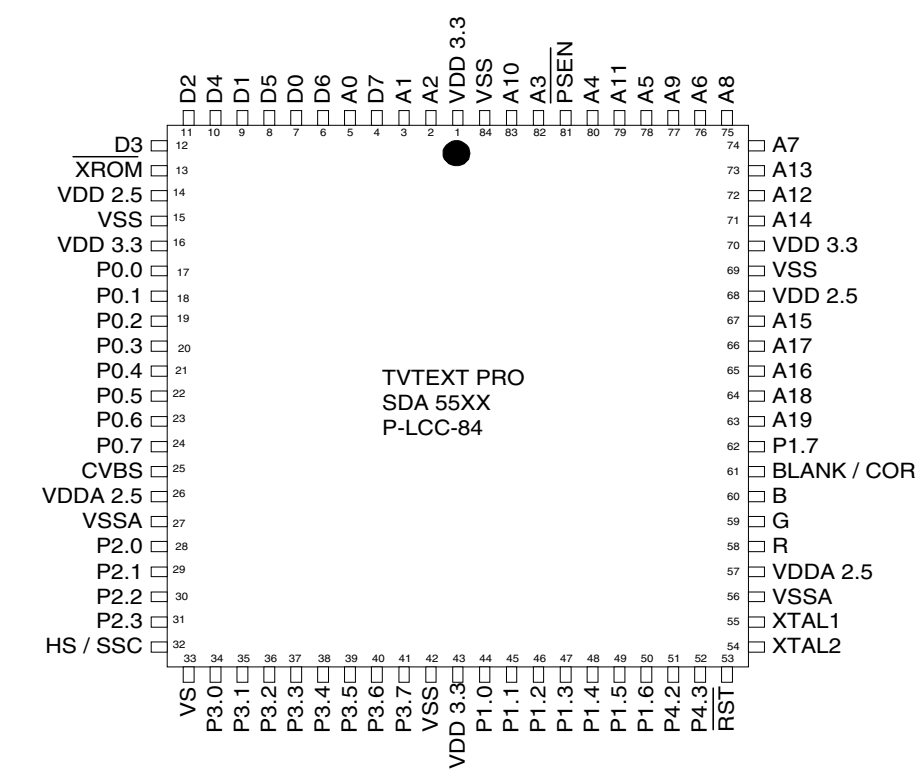


Fig. 2–4: PLCC84-2 (ROMless Version)

## 3. SFR Overview

| Add              | Long Name               | Short Name | Bit Add | Reset Value | Location | Bit7  | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2   | Bit1    | Bit 0   |
|------------------|-------------------------|------------|---------|-------------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| 80 <sup>1)</sup> | Port 0                  | P0         | Yes     | FF          | Port     | P0_7  | P0_6  | P0_5  | P0_4  | P0_3  | P0_2    | P0_1    | P0_0    |
| 81               | Stack pointer           | SP         | No      | 07          | Micro    | SP_7  | SP_6  | SP_5  | SP_4  | SP_3  | SP_2    | SP_1    | SP_0    |
| 82               | Data Pointer Low        | DPL        | No      | 00          | Micro    | DPL_7 | DPL_6 | DPL_5 | DPL_4 | DPL_3 | DPL_2   | DPL_1   | DPL_0   |
| 83               | Data Pointer High       | DPH        | No      | 00          | Micro    | DPH_7 | DPH_6 | DPH_5 | DPH_4 | DPH_3 | DPH_2   | DPH_1   | DPH_0   |
| 84               | Data Pointer Select     | DPSEL      | No      | 00          | Micro    | –     | –     | –     | –     | –     | DPSEL_2 | DPSEL_1 | DPSEL_0 |
| 85               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 86               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 87               | Power control           | PCON       | No      | 00          | Micro    | SMOD  | PDS   | IDLS  | SD    | GF1   | GF0     | PDE     | IDLE    |
| 88               | Tmr/Ctr control         | TCON       | Yes     | 00          | Micro    | TF1   | TR1   | TF0   | TR0   | IE1   | IT1     | IE0     | IT0     |
| 89               | Tmr/Ctr Mode Ctrl       | TMOD       | No      | 00          | Micro    | GATE1 | C/NT1 | M1(1) | M0(1) | GATE0 | C/NT0   | M1(0)   | M0(0)   |
| 8A               | Tmr/Ctr 0 Low byte      | TL0        | No      | 00          | Micro    | TL0_7 | TL0_6 | TL0_5 | TL0_4 | TL0_3 | TL0_2   | TL0_1   | TL0_0   |
| 8B               | Tmr/Ctr 1 Low byte      | TL1        | No      | 00          | Micro    | TL1_7 | TL1_6 | TL1_5 | TL1_4 | TL1_3 | TL1_2   | TL1_1   | TL1_0   |
| 8C               | Tmr/Ctr 0 High byte     | TH0        | No      | 00          | Micro    | TH0_7 | TH0_6 | TH0_5 | TH0_4 | TH0_3 | TH0_2   | TH0_1   | TH0_0   |
| 8D               | Tmr/Ctr 1 High byte     | TH1        | No      | 00          | Micro    | TH1_7 | TH1_6 | TH1_5 | TH1_4 | TH1_3 | TH1_2   | TH1_1   | TH1_0   |
| 8E               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 8F               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 90               | Port 1                  | P1         | Yes     | FF          | Port     | P1_7  | P1_6  | P1_5  | P1_4  | P1_3  | P1_2    | P1_1    | P1_0    |
| 91               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 92               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 93               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 94               | Memory Ext Reg 1        | MEX1       | No      | 00          | Micro    | CB19  | CB18  | CB17  | CB16  | NB19  | NB18    | NB17    | NB16    |
| 95               | Memory Ext Reg 2        | MEX2       | No      | 00          | Micro    | MM    | MB18  | MB17  | MB16  | IB19  | IB18    | IB17    | IB16    |
| 96               | Memory Ext Reg 3        | MEX3       | No      | 00          | Micro    | MB19  | UB3   | UB4   | MX19  | MXM   | MX18    | MX17    | MX16    |
| 97               | Memory Ext stack Ptr    | MEXSP      | No      | 00          | Micro    | –     | SP6   | SP5   | SP4   | SP3   | SP2     | SP1     | SP0     |
| 98               | Serial control register | SCON       | Yes     | 00          | UART     | SM0   | SM1   | SM2   | REN   | TB8   | RB8     | T1      | RI      |
| 99               | Serial Data Buffer      | SBUF       | No      | 00          | UART     | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2      | D1      | D0      |
| 9A               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 9B               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 9C               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 9D               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 9E               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |
| 9F               |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |       |       |       |       |       |         |         |         |

| Add | Long Name              | Short Name  | Bit Add | Reset Value | Location  | Bit7         | Bit 6     | Bit 5     | Bit 4     | Bit 3     | Bit 2     | Bit1      | Bit 0     |
|-----|------------------------|-------------|---------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| A0  | Port 2                 | P2          | Yes     | FF          | Port      | P2_7         | P2_6      | P2_5      | P2_4      | P2_3      | P2_2      | P2_1      | P2_0      |
| A1  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A2  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A3  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A4  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A5  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A6  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A7  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| A8  | Interrupt enable Reg 0 | IEN0        | Yes     | 00          | Interrupt | EAL          | –         | EAD       | EU        | ET1       | EX1       | ET0       | EX0       |
| A9  | Interrupt enable 1     | IEN1        | No      | 00          | Interrupt | –            | –         | EDV       | EAV       | EXX1      | EWT       | EXX0      | –         |
| AA  | Interrupt enable 2     | IEN2        | No      | 00          | Interrupt | –            | –         | EDH       | EAH       | ECC       | EPW       | –         | –         |
| AB  | Interrupt enable 3     | IEN3        | No      | 00          | Interrupt | –            | –         | EADW      | E24       | –         | –         | –         | –         |
| AC  | Interrupt Priority 1   | IP1         | No      | 00          | Interrupt | –            | –         | G5P0      | G4P0      | G3P0      | G2P0      | G1P0      | G0P0      |
| AD  | Interrupt control reg  | IRCON       | No      | 05          | Interrupt | EXX1R        | EXX1F     | EXX0R     | EXX0F     | EX1R      | EX1F      | EX0R      | EX0F      |
| AE  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| AF  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| B0  | Port 3                 | P3          | Yes     | FF          |           | P3_7         | P3_6      | P3_5      | P3_4      | P3_3      | P3_2      | P3_1      | P3_0      |
| B1  | Watchdog Reload        | WDT_rel     | No      | 00          | WDT       | WDTrel_7     | WDTrel_6  | WDTrel_5  | WDTrel_4  | WDTrel_3  | WDTrel_2  | WDTrel_1  | WDTrel_0  |
| B2  | Watchdog control       | WDT_ctrl    | No      | 00          | WDT       | WDT_in_start | WDT_narst | WDT_rst   | –         | –         | –         | –         | –         |
| B3  | Watchdog refresh       | WDT_refersh | No      | 00          | WDT       | WDT_ref      | WDT_tmr   | WTmr_strt | WTmr_ov   | –         | –         | –         | –         |
| B4  | WDT timer low byte     | WDT_low     | No      | 00          | WDT       | WDT_low_7    | WDT_low_6 | WDT_low_5 | WDT_low_4 | WDT_low_3 | WDT_low_2 | WDT_low_1 | WDT_low_0 |
| B5  | WDT timer high byte    | WDT_high    | No      | 00          | WDT       | WDT_hi_7     | WDT_hi_6  | WDT_hi_5  | WDT_hi_4  | WDT_hi_3  | WDT_hi_2  | WDT_hi_1  | WDT_hi_0  |
| B6  |                        |             | No      | 00          |           |              |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
| B7  | CRT reload low byte    | CRT_rell    | No      | 00          | CRT       | RelL_7       | RelL_6    | RelL_5    | RelL_4    | RelL_3    | RelL_2    | RelL_1    | RelL_0    |



| Add | Long Name             | Short Name      | Bit Add | Reset Value | Location  | Bit7     | Bit 6    | Bit 5    | Bit 4    | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Bit1     | Bit 0    |
|-----|-----------------------|-----------------|---------|-------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| B8  | Interrupt priority 0  | IP0             | Yes     | 00          | Micro     | –        | –        | G5P1     | G4P1     | G3P1     | G2P1     | G1P1     | G0P1     |
| B9  | CRT reload high byte  | CRT_relh        | No      | 00          | CRT       | RelH_7   | RelH_6   | RelH_5   | RelH_4   | RelH_3   | RelH_2   | RelH_1   | RelH_0   |
| BA  | CRT capture low byte  | CRT_capl        | No      | 00          | CRT       | CapL_7   | CapL_6   | CapL_5   | CapL_4   | CapL_3   | CapL_2   | CapL_1   | CapL_0   |
| BB  | CRT capture high byte | CRT_caph        | No      | 00          | CRT       | CapH_7   | CapH_6   | CapH_5   | CapH_4   | CapH_3   | CapH_2   | CapH_1   | CapH_0   |
| BC  | CRT min capture low   | CRT_mincapl     | No      | 00          | CRT       | MinL_7   | MinL_6   | MinL_5   | MinL_4   | MinL_3   | MinL_2   | MinL_1   | MinL_0   |
| BD  | CRT min capture high  | CRT_mincaph     | No      | 00          | CRT       | MinH_7   | MinH_6   | MinH_5   | MinH_4   | MinH_3   | MinH_2   | MinH_1   | MinH_0   |
| BE  | CRT control 0         | CRTCON0         | No      | 00          | CRT       | OV       | PR       | PLG      | REL      | RUN      | RISE     | FALL     | SEL      |
| BF  | CRT control 1         | CRTCON1         | No      | 00          | CRT       | –        | –        | –        | –        | –        | PR1      | First    | Start    |
| C0  | Central int service 0 | CISR0           | Yes     | 00          | Interrupt | L24      | ADC      | WTmr     | AVS      | DVS      | PWtmr    | AHS      | DHS      |
| C1  | PWM 8bit compare 0    | PWM_comp8_0     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC80_7   | PC80_6   | PC80_5   | PC80_4   | PC80_3   | PC80_2   | PC80_1   | PC80_0   |
| C2  | PWM 8bit compare 1    | PWM_comp8_1     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC81_7   | PC81_6   | PC81_5   | PC81_4   | PC81_3   | PC81_2   | PC81_1   | PC81_0   |
| C3  | PWM 8bit compare 2    | PWM_comp8_2     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC82_7   | PC82_6   | PC82_5   | PC82_4   | PC82_3   | PC82_2   | PC82_1   | PC82_0   |
| C4  | PWM 8bit compare 3    | PWM_comp8_3     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC83_7   | PC83_6   | PC83_5   | PC83_4   | PC83_3   | PC83_2   | PC83_1   | PC83_0   |
| C5  | PWM 8bit compare 4    | PWM_comp8_4     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC84_7   | PC84_6   | PWC84_5  | PC84_4   | PC84_3   | PC84_2   | PC84_1   | PC84_0   |
| C6  | PWM 8bit compare 5    | PWM_comp8_5     | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC85_7   | PC85_6   | PC85_5   | PC85_4   | PC85_3   | PC85_2   | PC85_1   | PC85_0   |
| C7  | PWM 14bit compare 0   | PWM_comp14_0    | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC140_7  | PC140_6  | PC140_5  | PC140_4  | PC140_3  | PC140_2  | PC140_1  | PC140_0  |
| C8  | Central int service 1 | CISR1           | Yes     | 00          | Interrupt | CC       | ADW      | –        | –        | –        | –        | IEX1     | IEX0     |
| C9  | PWM 14bit compare 1   | PWM_comp14_1    | No      | 00          | PWM       | PC141_7  | PC141_6  | PC141_5  | PC141_4  | PC141_3  | PC141_2  | PC141_1  | PC141_0  |
| CA  | PWM 14bit comp ext 0  | PWM_compext14_0 | No      | 00          | PWM       | PCX140_7 | PCX140_6 | PCX140_5 | PCX140_4 | PCX140_3 | PCX140_2 | PCX140_1 | PCX140_0 |
| CB  | PWM 14bit comp ext 1  | PWM_compext14_1 | No      | 00          | PWM       | PCX141_7 | PCX141_6 | PCX141_5 | PCX141_4 | PCX141_3 | PCX141_2 | PCX141_1 | PCX141_0 |
| CC  | PWM counter low byte  | PWM_cl          | No      | 00          | PWM       | PWC_7    | PWC_6    | PWC_5    | PWC_4    | PWC_3    | PWC_2    | PWC_1    | PWC_0    |
| CD  | PWM counter high byte | PWM_ch          | No      | 00          | PWM       | PWM_Tmr  | OV       | PWC_13   | PWC_12   | PWC_11   | PWC_10   | PWC_9    | PWC_8    |
| CE  | PWM channel enable    | PWM_En          | No      | 00          | PWM       | PE7      | PE6      | PE5      | PE4      | PE3      | PE2      | PE1      | PE0      |
| CF  |                       |                 |         |             |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |

| Add | Long Name               | Short Name | Bit Add | Reset Value | Location | Bit7       | Bit 6      | Bit 5      | Bit 4      | Bit 3     | Bit 2     | Bit1       | Bit 0     |
|-----|-------------------------|------------|---------|-------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| D0  | Program Status Word     | PSW        | Yes     | 00          | Micro    | CY         | AC         | F0         | RS1        | RS0       | OV        | F1         | P         |
| D1  | ADC channel 0 result    | CADC0      | No      | 00          | ADC      | CADC0 (7)  | CADC0 (6)  | CADC0 (5)  | CADC0 (4)  | CADC0 (3) | CADC0 (2) | CADC0 (1)  | CADC0 (0) |
| D2  | ADC channel 1 result    | CADC1      | No      | 00          | ADC      | CADC1 (7)  | CADC1 (6)  | CADC1 (5)  | CADC1 (4)  | CADC1 (3) | CADC1 (2) | CADC1 (1)  | CADC1 (0) |
| D3  | ADC channel 2 result    | CADC2      | No      | 00          | ADC      | CADC2 (7)  | CADC2 (6)  | CADC2 (5)  | CADC2 (4)  | CADC2 (3) | CADC2 (2) | CADC2 (1)  | CADC2 (0) |
| D4  | ADC channel 3 result    | CADC3      | No      | 00          | ADC      | CADC3 (7)  | CADC3 (6)  | CADC3 (5)  | CADC3 (4)  | CADC3 (3) | CADC3 (2) | CADC3 (1)  | CADC3 (0) |
| D5  | ADC Configuration       | CADCCO     | No      | 00          | ADC      | –          | –          | –          | ADWUL E    | AD3       | AD2       | AD1        | AD0       |
| D6  |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |            |            |            |            |           |           |            |           |
| D7  | Power save Extra Reg    | PSAVEX     | No      | 00          | P Save   | –          | –          | –          | –          | –         | CLK_S RC  | PLL_RS T   | PLLS      |
| D8  | Power Save Register     | PSAVE      | Yes     | 00          | P Save   | –          | –          | –          | CADC       | WAKUP     | SLI_ ACQ  | DISP       | PERI      |
| D9  | Config ACQ & Slicer     | STRVBI     | No      | 00          | Acq      | ACQON      | Reser- ved | ACQST A    | –          | VBIAD R_3 | VBIAD R_2 | VBIAD R_1  | VBIAD R_0 |
| DA  | DTO pixel freq factor 1 | PCLK1      | No      | 01          | DTO      | –          | –          | –          | –          | –         | PF(10)    | PF(9)      | PF(8)     |
| DB  | DTO pixel freq factor 0 | PCLK0      | No      | 48          | DTO      | PF(7)      | PF(6)      | PF(5)      | PF(4)      | PF(3)     | PF(2)     | PF(1)      | PF(0)     |
| DC  |                         |            | No      | 00          |          |            |            |            |            |           |           |            |           |
| DD  | Central Special ctrl 0  | CSCR 0     | No      | 00          | –        | –          | –          | Reser- ved | Reser- ved | P4_7_ Alt | VS_ OE    | O_ E_ P3_0 | O_ E_ Pol |
| DE  | Central Special ctrl 1  | CSCR 1     | No      | 00          | –        | IntSrc1    | IntSrc0    | –          | –          | ENARW     | A19_P4_4  | A18_P4_1   | A17_P4_0  |
| DF  | Sandcastle              | SNDCSTL    | No      | 00          | DSY NC   | –          | HYS        | SND_V_2    | SND_V_1    | SND_V_0   | SND_H_2   | SND_H_1    | SND_H_0   |
| E0  | Accumulator             |            | Yes     | 00          | Micro    | A_7        | A_6        | A_5        | A_4        | A_3       | A_2       | A_1        | A_0       |
| E1  | DSync control 1         | SCR1       | No      | A0          | D Sync   | Reser- ved | RGB_G_1    | RGB_G_0    | COR_ BL    | VSU_3     | VSU_2     | VSU_1      | VSU_0     |
| E2  | DSync control 0         | SCR0       | No      | 00          | D Sync   | RGB_D (1)  | RGB_D (0)  | HP         | VP         | INT       | SNC       | VCS        | MAST      |
| E3  | DSync V delay 1         | SDV1       | No      | 00          | D Sync   | –          | –          | –          | –          | –         | –         | SDV_9      | SDV_8     |
| E4  | DSync V delay 0         | SDV0       | No      | 20          | D Sync   | SDV_7      | SDV_6      | SDV_5      | SDV_4      | SDV_3     | SDV_2     | SDV_1      | SDV_0     |
| E5  | DSync H delay 1         | SDH1       | No      | 00          | D Sync   | –          | –          | –          | –          | SDH_11    | SDH_10    | SDH_9      | SDH_8     |
| E6  | DSync H delay 0         | SDH0       | No      | 48          | D Sync   | SDH_7      | SDH_6      | SDH_5      | SDH_4      | SDH_3     | SDH_2     | SDH_1      | SDH_0     |
| E7  | DSync H clamp begin     | HCR1       | No      | 08          | D Sync   | EHCR_7     | EHCR_6     | EHCR_5     | EHCR_4     | EHCR_3    | EHCR_2    | EHCR_1     | EHCR_0    |

| Add       | Long Name               | Short Name     | Bit Add | Reset Value | Location | Bit7        | Bit 6       | Bit 5     | Bit 4     | Bit 3     | Bit 2     | Bit1     | Bit 0     |
|-----------|-------------------------|----------------|---------|-------------|----------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| <b>E8</b> | Port 4                  | P4             | Yes     | EC          | Port     | P4_7        | P4_6        | P4_5      | P4_4      | P4_3      | P4_2      | P4_1     | P4_0      |
| E9        | DSync H clamp end       | HCR0           | No      | 00          | D Sync   | BHCR_7      | BHCR_6      | BHCR_5    | BHCR_4    | BHCR_3    | BHCR_2    | BHCR_1   | BHCR_0    |
| EA        | DSync V clamp begin 1   | BVCR1          | No      | 00          | D Sync   | --          | --          | --        | --        | --        | --        | BVCR_9   | BVCR_8    |
| EB        | DSync V clamp begin 0   | BVCR0          | No      | 00          | D Sync   | BVCR_7      | BVCR_6      | BVCR_5    | BVCR_4    | BVCR_3    | BVCR_2    | BVCR_1   | BVCR_0    |
| EC        | DSync V clamp end 1     | EVCR1          | No      | 00          | D Sync   | --          | --          | --        | --        | --        | --        | EVCR_9   | EVCR_8    |
| ED        | DSync V clamp end 0     | EVCR0          | No      | 00          | D Sync   | EVCR_7      | EVCR_6      | EVCR_5    | EVCR_4    | EVCR_3    | EVCR_2    | EVCR_1   | EVCR_0    |
| EE        | DSync Vetical line 1    | VLR1           | No      | 02          | D Sync   | --          | Odd_Ev      | VSU_3     | VSU_2     | VSU_1     | VSU_0     | VL_9     | VL_8      |
| EF        | DSync Vetical line 0    | VLR0           | No      | 71          | D Sync   | VL_7        | VL_6        | VL_5      | VL_4      | VL_3      | VL_2      | VL_1     | VL_0      |
| <b>F0</b> | B register              | B              | Yes     | 00          | Micro    | B_7         | B_6         | B_5       | B_4       | B_3       | B_2       | B_1      | B_0       |
| F1        | DSync Horiz period 1    | HPR1           | No      | 08          | D Sync   | --          | --          | --        | --        | HPR_11    | HPR_10    | HPR_9    | HPR_8     |
| F2        | DSync Horiz period 0    | HPR0           | No      | 55          | D Sync   | HPR_7       | HPR_6       | HPR_5     | HPR_4     | HPR_3     | HPR_2     | HPR_1    | HPR_0     |
| F3        | Display Ptr 1 high byte | PointArray1_1  | No      | 00          | Display  | --          | --          | Point1_13 | Point1_12 | Point1_11 | Point1_10 | Point1_9 | Point1_8  |
| F4        | Display Ptr 1 low byte  | PointArray1_0  | No      | 00          | Display  | Point1_7    | Point1_6    | Point1_5  | Point1_4  | Point1_3  | Point1_2  | Point1_1 | Point1_0  |
| F5        | Display Ptr 0 high byte | PointArray0_1  | No      | 00          | Display  | --          | --          | Point0_13 | Point0_12 | Point0_11 | Point0_10 | Point0_9 | Point0_8  |
| F6        | Display Ptr 0 low byte  | PointArray0_0  | No      | 00          | Display  | Point0_7    | Point0_6    | Point0_5  | Point0_4  | Point0_3  | Point0_2  | Point0_1 | Point0_0  |
| F7        |                         |                | No      | 00          |          |             |             |           |           |           |           |          |           |
| <b>F8</b> | Display OSD control     | OSD_ctrl       | Yes     | 00          | Display  | --          | --          | --        | --        | En_Ld_Cur | En_DG_Out | Dis_Cor  | Dis_Blank |
| F9        | Reserved <sup>2)</sup>  | TAP            | No      | 00          | --       | --          | --          | --        | --        | --        | --        | --       | --        |
| FA        | Reserved <sup>1)</sup>  | TAP            | No      | 00          | --       | --          | --          | --        | --        | --        | --        | --       | --        |
| FB        |                         |                | No      | 00          |          |             |             |           |           |           |           |          |           |
| FC        |                         |                | No      | 00          |          |             |             |           |           |           |           |          |           |
| FD        | Reserved <sup>1)</sup>  | Optimize OPT10 | No      | 80          | --       | FREQS EL(1) | FREQS EL(0) | OSCPD     | --        | --        | --        | --       | --        |
| FE        |                         |                | No      | 00          |          |             |             |           |           |           |           |          |           |
| FF        | Reserved <sup>1)</sup>  | MSIZ           | No      | 0F          | Micro    | MSIZ_7      | MSIZ_6      | MSIZ_5    | MSIZ_4    | MSIZ_3    | MSIZ_2    | MSIZ_1   | MSIZ_0    |

1) Red addresses are controller fix addresses.

2) These registers are for internal use of the device. Do not write in these locations.

All the bits marked with -- and "Reserved" are reserved.

As a general rule. Software should always only write to the bits which it wants to change all other bits implemented or not should be masked in order to avoid problems with future versions.

3.1. Additional Registers

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

CSCR0

SFR Address DD<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |    |         |         |          |       |          |         |
|----|----|---------|---------|----------|-------|----------|---------|
| -- | -- | ENETCLK | ENERCLK | P4_7_Alt | VS_OE | O_E_P3_0 | O_E_Pol |
|----|----|---------|---------|----------|-------|----------|---------|

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| --       | Not used.   |
| ENETCLK  | UART baud rate clk source bits  |
| ENERCLK  | Selects between 6 MHz and system clock. See test documentation.<br>For internal use only.   |
| P4_7_Alt | Selects the output function of the port<br>0: Port function is selected.<br>1: Port 4.7 alternate function is selected (see VS_OE).<br>For input port mode or slave mode VS input mode, port must be switched to input mode by writing 1 to the port latch. |
| VS_OE    | 0: P4.7 alternate output mode, Odd/Even selected.<br>1: P4.7 alternate output mode, Vertical Sync selected.<br>Refer to Section 18., register SCR0, for Vertical Sync details.  |
| O_E_P3_0 | 0: Port 3.0 port mode selected.<br>1: Port 3.0 works as a Odd/even output.  |
| P_E_POL  | 0: Odd = 1, Even = 0<br>1: Odd = 0, Even = 1<br>Note polarity is true for both P3.0 and P4.7.   |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**CSCR1**

SFR Address DE<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|         |         |    |    |       |                                |                                |                                |
|---------|---------|----|----|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| IntSrc1 | IntSrc0 | -- | -- | ENARW | $\overline{\text{A19\_P4\_4}}$ | $\overline{\text{A18\_P4\_1}}$ | $\overline{\text{A17\_P4\_0}}$ |
|---------|---------|----|----|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|

**IntSrc0**

0: Port 3.3 is the source of the interrupt.  
1: SSU is the source of interrupt, (Application note: Use with SEL = 1).

**IntSrc1**

0: Port 3.2 is the source of the interrupt.  
1: SSU is the source of interrupt, (Application note: Use with SEL = 0).

--

Not used.

--

Not used.

**ENARW**

0: Port P4.2 and P4.3 function as port pins  
1: Port P4.2 and P4.3 function as RD and WR signal outputs

 **$\overline{\text{A19\_P4\_4}}$** 

0: Pin functions as Address line  
1: Pin function as port

 **$\overline{\text{A18\_P4\_1}}$** 

0: Pin functions as Address line  
1: Pin function as port

 **$\overline{\text{A17\_P4\_0}}$** 

0: Pin functions as Address line  
1: Pin function as port

## 4. Clock System

### 4.1. General Function

The on-chip clock generator provides the TVTpro with its basic clock signals that controls all activities of the hardware. Its oscillator runs with an external crystal and appropriate oscillator circuitry (refer to Section 20.5.). For applications with low accuracy requirements (RTC is not used) the external oscillator circuit can also be a ceramic resonator. Depending on the absolute tolerance of the resonator the slicer may not work correctly. Moreover the display timings and baudrate prescaler have to be adapted in appropriate way. In some applications the timing reference given by the horizontal frequency of the CVBS signal can be used to measure the timing tolerance and to adjust the programming.

The on-chip phase locked loop (PLL) which is internally running at 300 MHz is fed by the oscillator or can be bypassed to reduce the power consumption. If it is not required to wake up immediately the PLL can also be switched off.

From the output frequency of the PLL two clock systems are derived:

## 4.2. System Clock

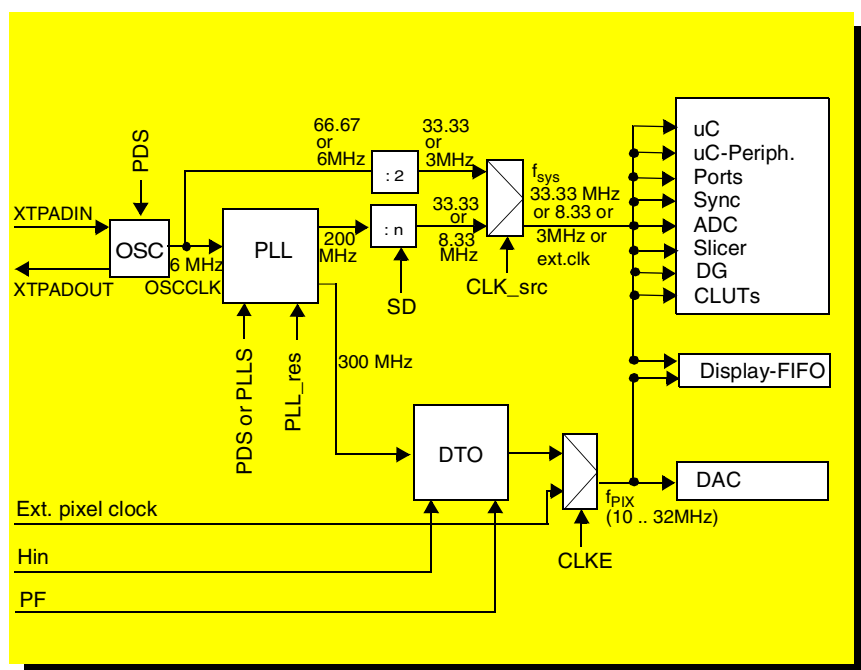
The 33.33 MHz system clock ( $f_{CPU}$ ) provides the processor, all processor related peripherals, the sync timing logic, the A/D converters, the slicer, the DG and the CLUTs.

It will be possible to use 8.33 MHz (1/4 of 33.33 MHz) for the system clock domain (slow down mode). Moreover the user is able to send the PLL into a power save mode (SFR-bit PLLS = 1). **Attention:** Before the PLL is switched to power save mode (PLLS = 1), the software has to switch the clock source from 200 MHz PLL-clock to the 3 MHz oscillator-clock (SFR bit CLK\_src = 1). In this mode the Slicer, Acquisition, DAC and Display Generator are switched off.

To switch back, the software has to end the PLL power save mode (SFR-bit PLLS = 0), reset the PLL for 10  $\mu$ s (3 machine cycles, SFR bit PLL\_res = '1', then '0' again), then wait 150  $\mu$ s (38 machine cycles) and switch back to the PLL clock (SFR-bit SCR\_src = 0).

If Power Down Mode is activated, PLL and Oscillator are send to sleep (SFR bit PDS = 1; refer to Section 8.).

Furthermore there are additional possibilities to disable the clocks for the peripherals. Please refer to Section 8..



**Fig. 4–1: Clock System of TVText Pro**

### 4.3. Pixel Clock

The second clock system is the pixel clock ( $f_{PIX}$ ), which is programmable in a range from 10 ... 32 MHz. It serves the output part of the display FIFO and the D/A converters. The pixel clock is derived from the high frequent output of the PLL and line by line phase shifted to the positive edge of the horizontal sync signal (normal polarity). Because the final display clock is derived from a DTO (digital time oscillator) it has no equidistant clock periods although the average frequency is exact. The pixel clock can also be inserted by an external source which has a fixed and stable phase to an external horizontal sync. This pixel clock generation system has several advantages:

- The frequency of the pixel clock can be programmed independently from the horizontal line period.
- Because the input of the PLL is already a signal with a relative high frequency, the resulting pixel frequency has an extremely low jitter.
- The resulting pixel clock follows the edge of the H-sync impulse without any delay and has always the same quality than the sync timing of the deflection controller.

### 4.4. Register Description

Default after reset: 01<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PCLK1**

SFR-Address DA  
(LSB)

|  |  |  |  |  |        |       |       |
|--|--|--|--|--|--------|-------|-------|
|  |  |  |  |  | PF(10) | PF(9) | PF(8) |
|--|--|--|--|--|--------|-------|-------|

**PF(10 ... 8):**

**Pixel Frequency factor (MSBs)**

For detailed information refer to PCLK0.

Default after reset: 48<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PCLK0**

SFR-Address DB  
(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PF(7) | PF(6) | PF(5) | PF(4) | PF(3) | PF(2) | PF(1) | PF(0) |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

**PF(7 ... 0):**

**Pixel Frequency factor (LSBs)**

This register defines the relation between the output pixel frequency and the frequency of the crystal. The pixel frequency does not depend on the line frequency. It can be calculated by the following formula:

$$f_{\text{pixel}} = \text{PF} \times 300 \text{ MHz} / 8192$$

The pixel frequency can be adjusted in steps of 36.6 kHz.

After power-on this register is set to 328<sub>d</sub>. So, the default pixel frequency is set to 12.01 MHz.

**Attention:** Register values greater than 874 generate pixel frequencies which are outside of the specified boundaries.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## PCON

SFR-Address 87<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|      |     |      |    |     |     |     |      |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| SMOD | PDS | IDLS | SD | GF1 | GF0 | PDE | IDLE |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|

**SMOD** Refer to Section 8.

**PDS** Power Down Start Bit

0: Power Down Mode not started.  
1: Power Down Mode started.

The instruction that sets this bit is the last instruction before entering power down mode. Additionally, this bit is protected by a delay cycle. Power down mode is entered, if and only if bit PDE was set by the previous instruction. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

PLL and Oscillator are switched off during Power Down.

**IDLS** Refer to Section 8.

**SD** Refer to Section 8.

**GFx** Refer to Section 8.

**PDE** Refer to Section 8.

**IDLE** Refer to Section 8.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## PSAVEX

SFR-Address D7<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|  |  |  |  |  |         |         |      |
|--|--|--|--|--|---------|---------|------|
|  |  |  |  |  | CLK_src | PLL_res | PLLS |
|--|--|--|--|--|---------|---------|------|

**PLLS** 0: PLL is running.  
1: PLL is disabled. The system clock is switched to the 6 MHz oscillator clock. The slicer acquisition and the display generator are switched off.

**Note: Bit PLLS can only be set, if bit CLK\_src = 1.**

**PLL\_res** 0: No PLL reset.  
1: PLL hold in reset.

**CLK\_src** 0: System clock (33.3 MHz) derived from 200 MHz PLL-clock.  
1: System clock (3 MHz) derived from 6 MHz oscillator clock.

**Note:**

Before the PLL is switched to power save mode (PLLS = 1), the SW has to switch the clock source from 200 MHz PLL-clock to the 3 MHz oscillator-clock (CLK\_src = 1). In this mode the Slicer, Acquisition, DAC and Display Generator are switched off. To switch back, the SW has to end the PLL power save mode (PLLS = 0), reset the PLL for 10 ms (3 machine cycles, PLL\_res = '1', then '0' again), then wait 150 ms (38 machine cycles) and switch back to the PLL clock (CLK\_src = 0).



## 5. Slicer and Acquisition

### 5.1. General Function

TVTpro provides a full digital slicer including digital H- and V-sync separation and digital sync processing. The acquisition interface is capable to process on all known data services starting from line 6 to line 23 for TV (Teletext, VPS, CC, G+, WSS). Four different framing codes (two of them programmable from field to field) are available for each field. Digital signal processing algorithms are applied to compensate various disturbance mechanisms. These are

- Noise measurement and compensation.
- Attenuation measurement and compensation.
- Group delay measurement and compensation.

**Note: Thus, TVTpro is optimized for precise data clock recovery and error free reception of data widely unaffected from noise and the currently valid channel characteristics.**

The CVBS input contains an on-chip clamping circuit. The integrated A/D converter is a 7 bit video converter running at the internal frequency of 33.33 MHz.

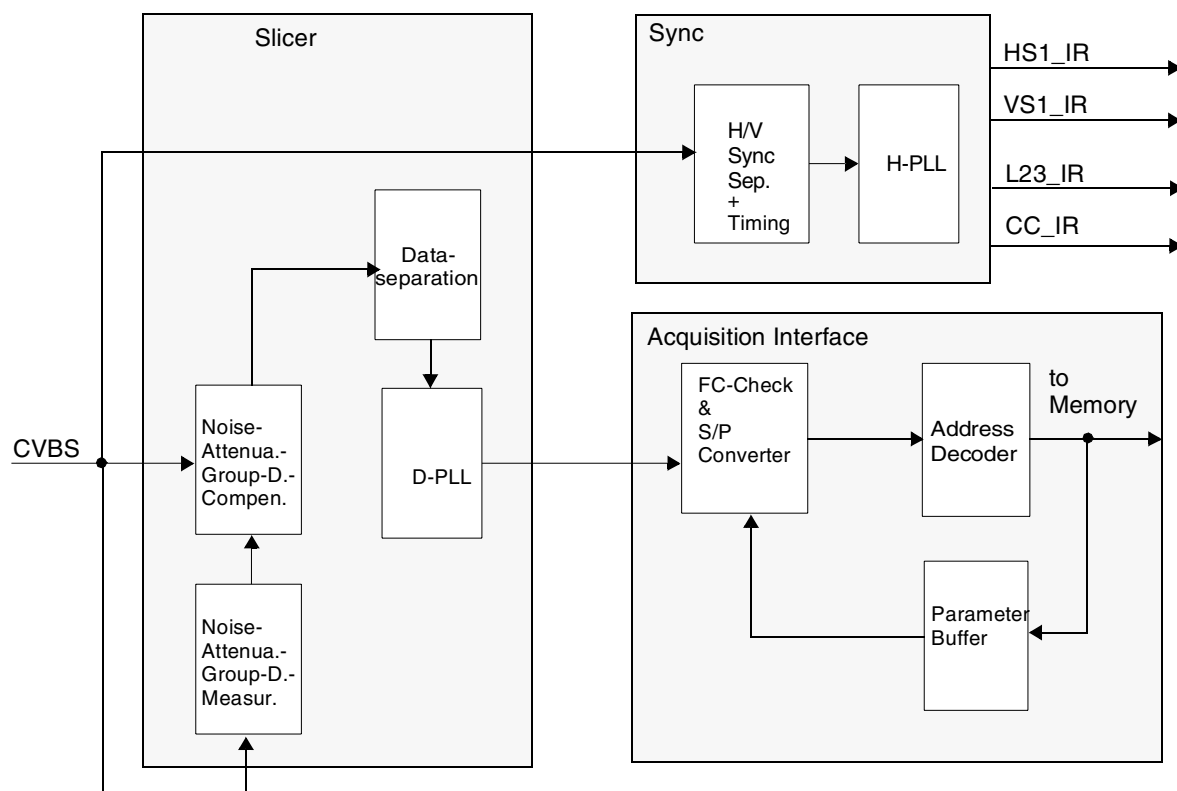
The sliced data is synchronized to the clock frequency given by the clock-run-in and to the framing code of the data stream, and written to a programmable VBI buffer. After line 23 is received an interrupt can be given to the microcontroller. The microcontroller starts to process the data of this buffer. That means, the data is error checked by software and stored in the memory.

To improve the signal quality the slicer control logic generates horizontal and vertical windows in which the reception of the framing code is allowed. The framing code can be programmed for each line individually, so that in each line a different service can be received. For VPS and WSS the framing code is hardwired. All follow up acquisition tasks are performed by the internal controller, so in principal the data of every data service can be acquired.

### 5.2. Slicer Architecture

The slicer is composed of three main blocks:

- The slicer
- The H/V synchronization for the slicer
- The acquisition interface



**Fig. 5–1: Block Diagram of Digital Slicer and Acquisition Interface**

## 5.2.1. Distortion Processing

After A/D conversion the digital CVBS bit stream is applied to a circuitry which corrects for transmission distortion. In order to apply the right algorithm for correcting, a signal measurement is done in parallel. This measurement device can detect the following distortions.

### Noise

The noise measurement unit incorporates two different algorithms. Both algorithms are using the value between two equalizing pulses which corresponds to the black level. As the black level is known to the system a window is placed between two equalizing pulses of line four. The first algorithm compares successive samples inside a window placed in line 4. The difference between these samples is measured and a flag is set as soon as this difference over several TV lines is greater than a specified value. This algorithm is able to detect higher frequency noise (e.g. with noise). The second algorithm measures the difference between the black value and the actual sampled value inside this window. As soon as this difference over several TV lines is greater than a specified value a second flag is set. This algorithm is sensitive against low frequency noise as it is known from co-channel distortion. Both flags can be used to optimize the correcting circuit characteristic in order to achieve best reception performance.

### Frequency Attenuation

During signal transmission the CVBS can be attenuated severely. This attenuation normally is frequency depending. That means that the higher the frequency the stronger the attenuation. As the clock-run-in (from now on CRI) for teletext represents the highest possible frequency (3.5 MHz) it can be used to measure the attenuation. As only strong negative attenuation causes problems during data slicing a flag is needed to notify highly negative attenuation. If this flag is set a special peaking filter is switched on in the data-path.

### Group Delay

Quite often the data stream is corrupted because of group delay distortion introduced by the transmission channel. The teletext framing code (E4<sub>H</sub>) is used as a reference for measurement. The delay of the edges inside this code can be used to measure the group delay distortion. The measurement is done every teletext line and filtered over several lines. It can be detected whether the signal has positive, negative or no group delay distortions. Two flags are set accordingly. By means of these two flags an allpass contained in the correcting circuit is configured to compensate the positive or negative group delays. All of the

above filters can be individually disabled, forced or set to an automatic mode via control registers.

## 5.2.2. Data Separation

Parallel to the signal analyses and distortion compensation a filter is calculating the slicing level. The slicing level is the mean-value of the CRI. As the teletext is coded using the NRZ format, the slicing level can not be calculated outside the CRI and is therefore frozen after CRI. Using this slicing level the data is separated from the digital CVBS signal. The result is a stream of zeros and ones. In order to find the logical zeros and ones which have been transmitted, the data clock needs to be recovered. Therefore a digital data PLL (D-PLL) is synchronized to the data clock during CRI using the transitions in the sliced data stream. This D-PLL is also frozen after CRI.

Timing informations for freezing the slicing level, stopping the D-PLL and other actions are generated by the timing circuit. It generates all control signals which are synchronized to the data start.

## 5.3. H/V-Synchronization

Slicer and acquisition interface need a lot of signals which have to be synchronized to the incoming CVBS (e.g. line number, field or line start). Therefore a sync slicing level is calculated and the sync signal is sliced from the filtered digital CVBS signal. Using digital integration vertical and horizontal sync pulses are separated. The horizontal pulses are fed into a digital H-PLL which has flywheel functionality. The H-PLL includes a counter which is used to generate all the necessary horizontal control signals. The vertical sync is used to synchronize the line counter, which is used to generate the vertical control signals.

The synchronization block includes a watchdog which keeps control of the actual lock condition of the H-PLL. The watchdog can produce an interrupt (CC\_IR) if synchronization has been lost. It could therefore be an indication for a channel change or missing input signal.

## 5.4. Acquisition Interface

The acquisition interface manages the data transfer between both slicers and memory. First of all a bit synchronization is performed (FC-check). Following this, the data is paralleled and as 8 bit words shifted into memory. In the other direction parameters are loaded from memory to the slicer. This parameter download takes place after the vertical sync and after horizontal sync. The parameters are used for slicer configuration.

The data acquisition supports several features. The FC-check is able to handle four different framing codes for one field. Two of this framing codes are programmable and could therefore be changed from field to field. The acquisition can be switched from normal mode (line 6 to 23) to full channel mode (line 6 to end of field).

#### 5.4.1. FC-Check

There are four FC's which are compared to the incoming signal. The first one is 8-bit wide and is loaded down with the field parameters. The second one is 16-bit wide and fixed to the FC of VPS. The third one is 16-bit wide as well, but can be loaded with the field parameters. If the third one is used, the user can specify not only the FC but also a don't-care mask. The fourth FC is reserved for WSS. The actual FC can be changed line by line.

##### FC1

This FC should be used for all services with 8-bit framing codes (e.g. for TTX). The actual framing code is loaded down each field. The check can be done without any error tolerance or with a one bit error tolerance.

##### FCVPS

This FC is fixed to that of VPS. Only an error free signal will enable the reception of the VPS data line.

**Note: If VPS should be sliced in field 1 and TTX in field 2 the appropriate line parameters for line 16 have to be changed dynamically from field to field.**

##### FC3

This 16-bit framing code is loaded with the field parameters as well as a don't care mask. The incoming signal is compared with both, framing code and don't care mask. Further reception is enabled if all bits which are not don't care match the incoming data stream.

##### FCWSS

This FC is fixed to that of WSS. Only an error free signal will enable the reception of the WSS data line.

#### FC-Check Select

There is a two bit line parameter called FCSEL. By means of this parameter the user is able to select which FC-Check is used for the actual line. If NORM is set to WSS the WSS FC-Check is used independently of FCSEL.

#### 5.4.2. Interrupts

Some events which occur inside the slicer, sync separation or acquisition interface should cause an interrupt. They are summarized in register CISR0 and CISR1. The hardware sets the associated interrupt flag which must be manually reset by software before the next interrupt can be accepted.

#### 5.4.3. VBI Buffer and Memory Organization

Slicer and acquisition interface need parameters for configuration and produce status information for the CPU.

Some of these parameters and status bits are constant for a field. Those parameters are called field parameters. They are downloaded after the vertical sync.

Other parameters and status bits may change from line to line (e.g. data service depending values). Those parameters are called line parameters. They are downloaded after each horizontal sync impulse.

The start address of the VBI buffer can be configured with a special function register 'STRVBI'. 9 bytes are needed for the field parameter. 47 byte should be reserved for every sliced data line. If 18 lines of data (in full channel mode 314) have been send to memory no further acquisition takes place until the next vertical pulse appears and the H-PLL is still locked. That means if at least 855 Bytes (14767 Bytes in full channel mode) are reserved for the VBI buffer no VBI overflow is possible. The acquisition can be started and stopped by the controller using bit 'ACQON' of register STRVBI. The acquisition is stopped as soon as this bit changed to '0'. If the bit is changed back to '1' the acquisition starts again with the next V-pulse (only if STAB = 1). The start address (Bit 3 ... 0 of register STRVBI) of the VBI buffer should only be changed if the acquisition is switched off.

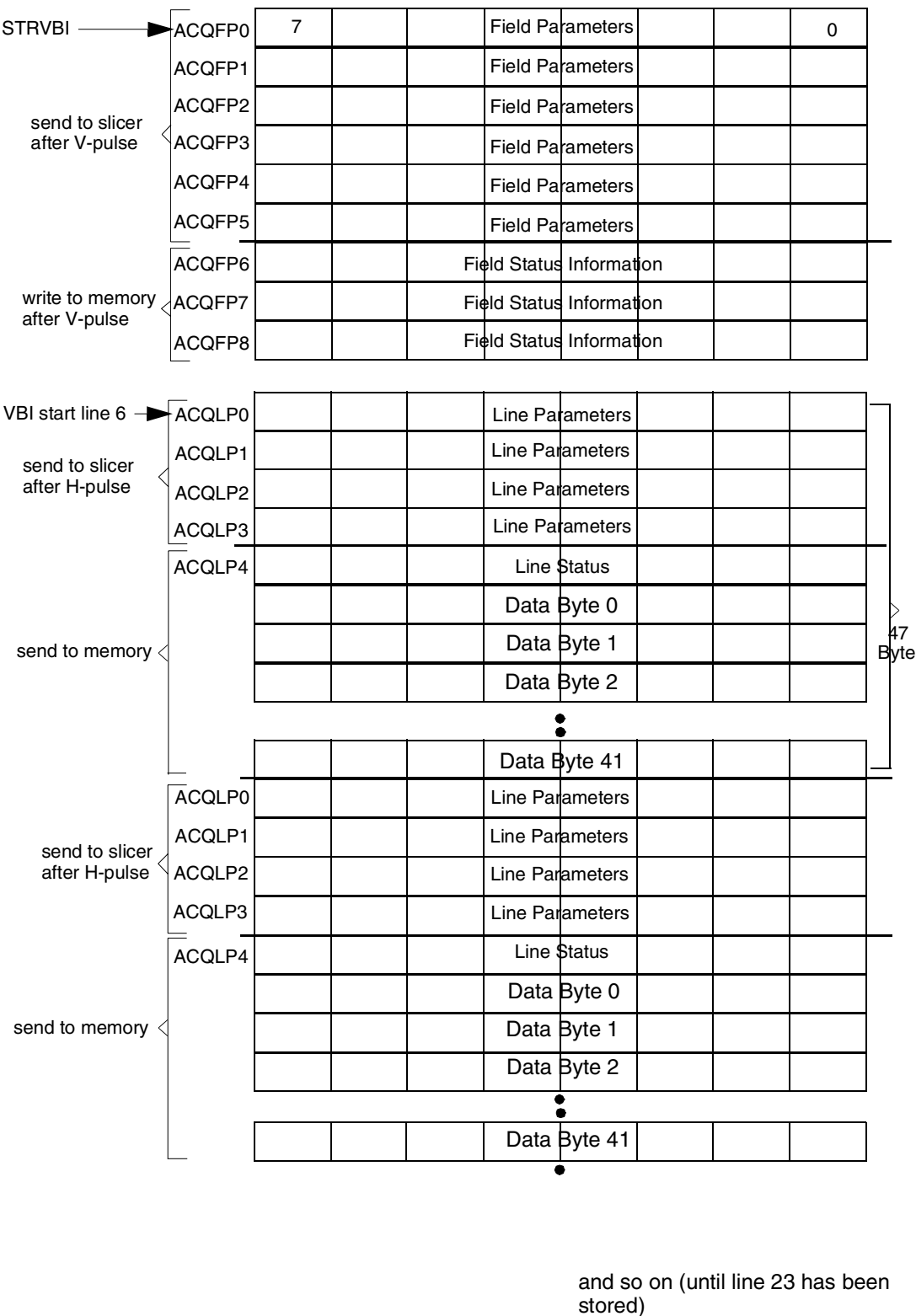


Fig. 5–2: VBI Buffer: General Structure

## 5.5. Register Description

The acquisition interface has only three SFR Registers. The line and field parameters are stored in the RAM (RAM Registers). They have to be initialized by software before starting the acquisition.

### Special Function Registers:

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### STRVBI

SFR-Address D9<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|       |          |        |  |        |        |        |        |
|-------|----------|--------|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ACQON | reserved | ACQSTA |  | VBIADR | VBIADR | VBIADR | VBIADR |
|-------|----------|--------|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|

**VBIADR** Defines the 4 MSB's of the start address of the VBI buffer (the LSB's are fixed to '0' by hardware). The VBI buffer location can be aligned to any 1 KByte memory segment.

#### ACQSTA First Framing code after vertical sync:

0: No framing code after vertical sync has been detected.

1: Framing code after vertical sync has been detected.

**Note: The bit is set by hardware and cleared by software.**

#### ACQON Enable Acquisition:

0: The ACQ interface does not access memory (immediately inactive).

1: The ACQ interface is active and writes data to memory (switching on is synchronous to V).

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### CISR0 bit addressable

SFR Address C0<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|     |     |      |     |     |       |     |     |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| L24 | ADC | WTmr | AVS | DVS | PWtmr | AHS | DHS |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|

**L24** 1: Line 24 start interrupt occurred, source bit set by hardware, source bit must be reset by software after entering the interrupt service routine.

0: No Line 24 start interrupt has occurred.

**ADC** Refer to Section 7.

**WTmr** Refer to Section 7.

**AVS** 1: Acquisition vertical sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.

0: Acquisition vertical sync interrupt source bit must be reset by software.

**DVS** Refer to Section 7.

**PWtmr** Refer to Section 7.

**AHS** 1: Acquisition horizontal sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.

0: Acquisition horizontal sync interrupt source bit must be reset by software.

**DHS** Refer to Section 7.

|   |     |                       |  |  |  |                                      |      |
|---|-----|-----------------------|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |     | CISR1 bit addressable |  |  |  | SFR Address C8 <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |      |
| CC  | ADW |                       |  |  |  | IEX1                                 | IEX0 |

- CC

1: Channel change interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
0: Channel change interrupt source bit must be reset by software.
- ADW

Refer to Section 7.
- IEX1

Refer to Section 7.
- IEX0

Refer to Section 7.

**Note:** The interrupt request flags of the ACQ interrupt subnode have to be cleared by software inside the interrupt service routine.

5.5.1. RAM Registers

Field Parameters

All field parameters are updated once in a field. That means the status information written from the acquisition interface to the memory represent only a snapshot of the status.

|   |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |       |
|---|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|-------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |         | ACQFP0  |         |         |         |        |        | (LSB) |
| FC3(15)                                       | FC3(14) | FC3(13) | FC3(12) | FC3(11) | FC3(10) | FC3(9) | FC3(8) |       |

- FC3(15..8):

Framing code 3 (High Byte)

Bit 15: First received bit of FC.

|   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |
|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |        | ACQFP1 |        |        |        |        |        | (LSB) |
| FC3(7)  | FC3(6) | FC3(5) | FC3(4) | FC3(3) | FC3(2) | FC3(1) | FC3(0) |       |

- FC3(7..0):

Framing code 3 (Low Byte)

Bit 0: Last received bit of FC.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQFP2**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|                 |                 |                 |                 |                 |                 |                |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| FC3MASK<br>(15) | FC3MASK<br>(14) | FC3MASK<br>(13) | FC3MASK<br>(12) | FC3MASK<br>(11) | FC3MASK<br>(10) | FC3MASK<br>(9) | FC3MASK<br>(8) |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|

**FC3MASK(15..8)      Mask for Framing code 3 (High Byte)**

Bit 15: Mask for first received bit of FC.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQFP3**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| FC3MASK<br>(7) | FC3MASK<br>(6) | FC3MASK<br>(5) | FC3MASK<br>(4) | FC3MASK<br>(3) | FC3MASK<br>(2) | FC3MASK<br>(1) | FC3MASK<br>(0) |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|

**FC3MASK(7..0):      Mask for Framing code 3 (Low Byte)**

Bit 0: Mask for last received bit of FC.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQFP4**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| FC1(7) | FC1(6) | FC1(5) | FC1(4) | FC1(3) | FC1(2) | FC1(1) | FC1(0) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

**FC1(7..0):      Framing code 1**

Bit 7: First received bit of FC.

Bit 0: Last received bit of FC.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>

## ACQFP5

(MSB)

(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |      |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| AGDON | AFRON | ANOON | GDPON | GDNON | FREON | NOION | FULL |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|

### FULL:

0: Full channel mode off.

1: Full channel mode on.

**Note: Don't forget to reserve enough memory for the VBI buffer and to initialize the appropriate line parameters.**

### NOION:

0: Noise compensation depends on ANOON.

1: Noise compensation is always on.

### FREON:

0: Frequency depending attenuation compensation depends on AFRON.

1: Frequency depending attenuation compensation is always on.

### GDNON:

0: Group delay compensation depends on AGDON.

1: Negative group delay compensation is always on.

### GDPON:

0: Group delay compensation depends on AGDON.

1: Positive group delay compensation is always on.

### ANOON:

#### Automatic noise compensation

0: Compensation Off

1: Compensation On  
(Automatic: measurement depending compensation)

### AFRON:

#### Automatic frequency depending attenuation

0: Compensation Off

1: Compensation On  
(Automatic: measurement depending compensation)

### AGDON:

#### Automatic group delay

0: Compensation Off

1: Compensation On  
(Automatic: Measurement Depending Compensation)



Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQFP6**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|          |         |      |      |       |          |       |         |
|----------|---------|------|------|-------|----------|-------|---------|
| NOISE(0) | FREATTF | STAB | VDOK | FIELD | NOISE(1) | GRDON | GRDSIGN |
|----------|---------|------|------|-------|----------|-------|---------|

**GRDSIGN:****Group delay detector**

0: If group delay distortion has been detected it was positive.

1: If group delay distortion has been detected it was negative.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**GRDON:****Group delay detector**

0: No group delay distortion detected.

1: Group delay distortion detected.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**NOISE(1..0):****Noise and co-channel detector of slicer 1**

00: No noise and no co-channel-distortion has been detected.

01: No noise but **co-channel-distortion** has been detected.10: **Noise** but no co-channel-distortion has been detected.11: **Strong noise** has been detected.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**FIELD:****Field detector**

0: Actual field is field 1.

1: Actual field is field 2.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**VDOK:****Vertical sync watchdog**

0: There was no vertical sync during stable horizontal synchronization.

1: There was at least one vertical sync during stable horizontal synchronization.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**STAB:****Horizontal sync watchdog**

0: H-PLL is not locked.

1: H-PLL is locked.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

**FREATTF:****Frequency depending attenuation measurement (Field indicator)**

High frequency CVBS1-components (around 3.5 MHz) are strongly damped (6 to 9 dB) compared to lower frequency CVBS1-components.

0: No frequency depending attenuation has been detected during the last field.

1: For at least one text line during the last field frequency depending attenuation has been detected.

(Written to memory by ACQ-interface)

|                                      |  |  |  |                |                |               |               |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> |  |  |  | ACQFP7         |                |               |               |
| (MSB)                                |  |  |  | (LSB)          |                |               |               |
|                                      |  |  |  | LEOFLI<br>(11) | LEOFLI<br>(10) | LEOFLI<br>(9) | LEOFLI<br>(8) |

**LEOFLI(11..8):**            **Length of line (MSB's)**  
Bit 3: MSB

|                                      |               |               |               |               |               |               |               |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> |               |               |               | ACQFP8        |               |               |               |
| (MSB)                                |               |               |               | (LSB)         |               |               |               |
| LEOFLI<br>(7)                        | LEOFLI<br>(6) | LEOFLI<br>(5) | LEOFLI<br>(4) | LEOFLI<br>(3) | LEOFLI<br>(2) | LEOFLI<br>(1) | LEOFLI<br>(0) |

**LEOFLI(7..0):**            **Length of line (LSB's)**  
Bit 0: LSB

Line Parameters

|                                      |           |           |           |           |           |          |          |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> |           |           |           | ACQLP0    |           |          |          |
| (MSB)                                |           |           |           | (LSB)     |           |          |          |
| DINCR(15)                            | DINCR(14) | DINCR(13) | DINCR(12) | DINCR(11) | DINCR(10) | DINCR(9) | DINCR(8) |

**DINCR(15..8):**            **Data PLL Frequency Select (High Byte)**

Specifies the frequency of the D-PLL of slicer 1. This parameter is used to configure the D-PLL output frequency according to the service used.

**DINCR = f<sub>data</sub> × 218 / 33.33 MHz**

|                               |              |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>f<sub>data</sub> [MHz]</b> | <b>DINCR</b> |
| 6.9375                        | 54559        |
| 5.7273                        | 45041        |
| 5.0                           | 39321        |
| 1.006993                      | 7920         |

|                                      |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> |          |          |          | ACQLP1   |          |          |          |
| (MSB)                                |          |          |          | (LSB)    |          |          |          |
| DINCR(7)                             | DINCR(6) | DINCR(5) | DINCR(4) | DINCR(3) | DINCR(2) | DINCR(1) | DINCR(0) |

**DINCR(7..0):**            **Data PLL Frequency Select (Low Byte)**  
(refer to ACQLP0)

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQLP2**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|         |         |         |          |          |       |     |          |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|-------|-----|----------|
| NORM(2) | NORM(1) | NORM(0) | FCSEL(1) | FCSEL(0) | FC1ER | VCR | reserved |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|-------|-----|----------|

**VCR:**

This bit is used to change the behavior of the D-PLL.  
(corresponds to slicer 1)

0: D-PLL tuning is stopped after CRI.

1: D-PLL is tuned throughout the line.

**FC1ER:**

If this bit is '1' the FC1 check is performed with one bit error tolerance.

0: No error tolerance for FC1-check

1: One bit error tolerance for FC1-check

**FCSEL(1..0)**

There are three different framing codes which can be used for each field. The framing code used for the actual line is selected with FCSEL (corresponds to slicer 1).

| <b>FCSEL</b> | <b>FC</b>   |
|--------------|-------------|
| 00           | FC1         |
| 01           | FC2         |
| 10           | FC3         |
| 11           | No FC-check |

**NORM(2..0)**

Most timing signals are closely related to the actual data service used. Therefore 3 bits are reserved to specify the timing for the service used in the actual line. (corresponds to slicer 1)

| <b>NORM</b> | <b>Service</b>  |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 000         | TXT             |
| 001         | reserved        |
| 010         | VPS             |
| 011         | WSS             |
| 100         | CC              |
| 101         | reserved        |
| 110         | reserved        |
| 111         | no data service |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQLP3**

(MSB)

(LSB)

| MLENGTH | MLENGTH | MLENGTH | ALENGTH | ALENGTH | CLKDIV | CLKDIV | CLKDIV |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| (2)     | (1)     | (0)     | (1)     | (0)     | (2)    | (1)    | (0)    |

**CLKDIV(1..0):**

The slicing level filter needs to find the DC value of the CVBS during CRI. In order to do this it should suppress at least the CRI frequency. As different services use different data frequencies the CRI frequency will be different as well. Therefore the filter characteristic needs to be shifted. This can be done by using different clocks for the filter. The filter itself shows sufficient suppression for frequencies between  $0.0757 \times SL_{CLK}$  and  $0.13 \times SL_{CLK}$  ( $SL_{CLK}$  is the actual filter clock and corresponds to slicer 1)

**CLKDIV       $SL_{CLK}$** 

|     |                  |
|-----|------------------|
| 000 | $1 \times f_s$   |
| 001 | $1/2 \times f_s$ |
| 010 | $1/3 \times f_s$ |
| 011 | $1/4 \times f_s$ |
| 100 | $1/5 \times f_s$ |
| 101 | $1/6 \times f_s$ |
| 110 | $1/7 \times f_s$ |
| 111 | $1/8 \times f_s$ |

**Note:  $f_s = 33.33$  MHz****ALENGTH(2..0):**

If noise has been detected or if NOISEON = 1 the output of the slicing level filter is further averaged by means of an accumulation (arithmetic averaging). ALENGTH specifies the number of slicing level filter output values used for averaging. The accumulation clock depends on CLKDIV.

| ALENGTH | Number of Slicing<br>Values used for Averaging | Level Output |
|---------|--|--------------|
| 00      | 2  |              |
| 01      | 4  |              |
| 10      | 8  |              |
| 11      | 16   |              |

**MLENGTH(2..0):**

For noise suppression reasons a median filter has been introduced after the actual data separation. Because of over sampling successive samples could be averaged. Therefore an odd number of sliced successive samples is taken and if the majority are '1' a '1' is sliced otherwise a '0'. MLENGTH specifies how many samples are taken. (Corresponds to slicer 1)

| MLENGTH | Number of samples |
|---------|-------------------|
| 000     | 1                 |
| 001     | 3                 |
| 010     | 5                 |
| 011     | 7                 |
| 100     | 9                 |
| 101     | 11                |
| 110     | 13                |
| 111     | 15                |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**ACQLP4**

(MSB)

(LSB)

|         |         |         |         |         |         |      |      |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------|------|
| PERR(5) | PERR(4) | PERR(3) | PERR(2) | PERR(1) | PERR(0) | TLDE | FCOK |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------|------|

**FCOK:****Framing Code Received**

0: No framing code has been detected (no new data has been written to memory).

1: The selected framing code has been detected (new data has been written to memory).

**PERR(5..0)****Phase Error Watch Dog (detection of test line CCIR331a or b)**

The value shows how often in a line the internal PLL found strong phase deviations between PLL and sliced data. The value can be used to detect test line CCIR331a or b.

PERRP &lt; 32? No test line.

PERRP &gt; 31? Test line CCIR331a or b detected.

**TLDE****Test Line Detected (CCIR17 or CCIR18 or CCIR330)**

0: No test line of the above mentioned test lines has been detected.

1: The following data has most likely be sliced from a test line and should therefore be ignored.

## 5.5.2. Recommended Parameter Settings

|         | TTX        | VPS        | WSS        | CC         | G+         |
|---------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| AGDON   | 1          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| AFRON   | 1          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| ANOON   | 1          | 1          | 1          | 1          | 1          |
| GDPON   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| GDNON   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| FREON   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| NOION   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| DINCR   | 54559      | 39321      | 39321      | 7920       | 7920       |
| FC1E    | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| MLENGTH | 1          | 2          | 7          | 7          | 7          |
| ALENGTH | 2          | 2          | 2          | 2          | 2          |
| CLKDIV  | 0          | 0          | 2          | 5          | 5          |
| NORM    | 0          | 2          | 3          | 4          | 5          |
| FCSEL   | 0          | 1          | 2          | 2          | 2          |
| VCR     | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| MATCH   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| FC1     | 228        | don't care | don't care | don't care | don't care |
| FC3     | don't care | don't care | don't care | 3          | 1261       |
| FC3MASK | don't care | don't care | don't care | 65472      | 63488      |

## 6. Microcontroller

### 6.1. Architecture

Every CPU machine cycle consists of 12 internal CPU clock period.

The CPU manipulates operands in two memory spaces: the program memory space, and the data memory space. The program memory address space is provided to accommodate relocatable code.

The data memory address space is divided into the 256-byte internal data RAM, XRAM (extended data memory, accessible with MOVX instructions) and the 128-byte Special Function Register (SFR) address spaces. Four register banks (each bank has eight registers), 128 addressable bits, and the stack reside in the internal data RAM. The stack depth is limited only by the available internal data RAM. Its location is determined by the 8-bit stack pointer. All registers except the program counter and the four 8-register banks reside in the special function register address space. These memory mapped registers include arithmetic registers, pointers, I/O-ports, registers for the interrupt system, timers, pulse width modulator, capture control unit, watchdog timer, UART, display, acquisition control etc. Many locations in the SFR address space are addressable as bits.

Note that reading from unused locations within data memory will yield undefined data.

Conditional branches are performed relative to the 16 bit program counter. The register-indirect jump permits branching relative to a 16-bit base register with an offset provided by an 8-bit index register. Sixteen-bit jumps and calls permit branching to any location in the memory address space.

The processor has five methods for addressing source operands: register, direct, register-indirect, immediate, and base register plus index register-indirect addressing.

The first three methods can be used for addressing destination operands. Most instructions have a 'destination, source' field that specifies the data type, addressing methods and operands involved. For operations other than moves, the destination operand is also a source operand.

Registers in the four 8-register banks can be accessed through register, direct, or register-indirect addressing; the lower 128 bytes of internal data RAM through direct or register-indirect addressing, the upper 128 bytes of internal data RAM through register-indirect addressing; and the special function registers through direct addressing. Look-up tables resident in program memory can be accessed through base register plus index register-indirect addressing.

### 6.1.1. CPU-Hardware

#### 6.1.1.1. Instruction Decoder

Each program instruction is decoded by the instruction decoder. This unit generates the internal signals that control the functions of each unit within the CPU section. These signals control the sources and destination of data, as well as the function of the Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU).

#### 6.1.1.2. Program Control Section

The program control section controls the sequence in which the instructions stored in program memory are executed. The conditional branch logic enables conditions internal and external to the processor to cause a change in the sequence of program execution. The 16-bit program counter holds the address of the instruction to be executed. It is manipulated with the control transfer instructions listed in Section 6.3..

#### 6.1.1.3. Internal Data RAM

The internal data RAM provides a 256-byte scratch pad memory, which includes four register banks and 128 direct addressable software flags. Each register bank contains registers R0 ... R7. The addressable flags are located in the 16-byte locations starting at byte address 20<sub>H</sub> and ending with byte location 2F<sub>H</sub> of the RAM address space.

In addition to this standard internal data RAM the processor contains an extended internal RAM. It can be considered as a part of an external data memory. It is referenced by MOVX instructions (MOVX A, @DPTR), the memory organization is explained in Section 10..

#### 6.1.1.4. Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU)

The arithmetic section of the processor performs many data manipulation functions and includes the Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU) and the A-, B- and PSW registers. The ALU accepts 8-bit data words from one or two sources and generates an 8-bit result under the control of the instruction decoder. The ALU performs the arithmetic operations of add, subtract, multiply, divide, increment, decrement, BCD-decimal-add adjust and compare, and the logic operations of and, or, exclusive-or, complement and rotate (right, left, or nibble swap).

The A-register is the accumulator, the B-register is dedicated during multiply and divide and serves as both a source and a destination. During all other operations the B-register is simply another location of the special function register space and may be used for any purpose.

6.1.1.5. Boolean Processor

The Boolean processor is an integral part of the processor architecture. It is an independent bit processor with its own instruction set, its own accumulator (the carry flag) and its own bit-addressable RAM and I/O. The bit manipulation instructions allow the direct addressing of 128 bits within the internal data RAM and several bits within the special function registers. The special function registers which have addresses exactly divisible by eight contain directly addressable bits.

The Boolean processor can perform, on any addressable bit, the bit operations of ‘set’, ‘clear’, ‘complement’, ‘jump-if-set’, ‘jump-if-not-set’, ‘jump-if-set then-clear’ and ‘move to/from carry’. Between any addressable bit (or its complement) and the carry flag it can perform the bit operation of logical AND or logical OR with the result returned to the carry flag.

6.1.1.6. Program Status Word Register (PSW)

The PSW flags record processor status information and control the operation of the processor. The carry (CY), auxiliary carry (AC), two user flags (F0 and F1), register bank select (RS0 and RS1), overflow (OV) and parity (P) flags reside in the program status word register. These flags are bit-memory-mapped within the byte-memory-mapped PSW. The CY, AC, and OV flags generally reflect the status of the latest arithmetic operations. The CY flag is also the Boolean accumulator for bit operations. The P-flag always reflects the parity of the A-register. F0 and F1 are general purpose flags which are pushed onto the stack as part of a PSW save. The two register bank select bits (RS1 and RS0) determine which one of the four register banks is selected as follows:

Table 6–1:

| RS1 | RS0 | Register Bank | Register Location                   |
|-----|-----|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0   | 0             | 00 <sub>H</sub> ... 07 <sub>H</sub> |
| 0   | 1   | 1             | 08 <sub>H</sub> ... 0F <sub>H</sub> |
| 1   | 0   | 2             | 10 <sub>H</sub> ... 17 <sub>H</sub> |
| 1   | 1   | 3             | 18 <sub>H</sub> ... 1F <sub>H</sub> |

|  |    |    |     |     |    |                                   |   |
|--|----|----|-----|-----|----|-----------------------------------|---|
| Reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> Program Status Word (MSB) |    |    |     | PSW |    | SFR Address D0 <sub>H</sub> (LSB) |   |
| CY   | AC | F0 | RS1 | RS0 | OV | F1                                | P |



### 6.1.1.7. Stack Pointer (SP)

The 8-bit stack pointer contains the address at which the last byte was pushed onto the stack. This is also the address of the next byte that will be popped. The SP is incremented during a push. SP can be read or written to under software control. The stack may be located anywhere within the internal data RAM address space and may be as large as 256 bytes. Note that for memory above 64K, memory extension stack is used, refer to Section 10.3..

### 6.1.1.8. Data Pointer Register (DPTR)

The 16-bit Data Pointer Register DPTR is the concatenation of registers DPH (high-order byte) and DPL (low-order byte). The DPTR is used in register-indirect addressing to move program memory constants and to access the extended data memory. DPTR may be manipulated as one 16-bit register or as two independent 8-bit registers DPL and DPH.

Eight data pointer registers are available, the active one is selected by a special function register (DPSEL).

### 6.1.2. CPU Timing

Timing generation is completely self-contained, except for the frequency reference which can be a crystal or external clock source. The on-board oscillator is a parallel anti-resonant circuit. The XTAL2 pin is the output of a high-gain amplifier, while XTAL1 is its input. A crystal connected between XTAL1 and XTAL2 provides the feedback and phase shift required for oscillation.

In slowdown mode, processor runs at one fourth the normal frequency. This mode is useful when power consumption needs to be reduced. Slow down mode is entered by setting the bit SD in PCON register.

**Note: Any Slow-down mode should only be used if teletext reception and the display are disabled. Otherwise processing of the incoming text data might be incomplete and the display structure will be corrupted. For disabling acquisition and display generator refer to Section 8..**

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**DPL**

SFR Address 84<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DPL_7 | DPL_6 | DPL_5 | DPL_4 | DPL_3 | DPL_2 | DPL_1 | DPL_0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

**DPL\_X**

Data Pointer low byte

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**DPH**

SFR Address 84<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DPH_7 | DPH_6 | DPH_5 | DPH_4 | DPH_3 | DPH_2 | DPH_1 | DPH_0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

**DPH\_X**

Data Pointer high byte

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**DPSEL**

SFR Address 84<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|  |  |  |  |  |         |         |         |
|--|--|--|--|--|---------|---------|---------|
|  |  |  |  |  | DPSEL_2 | DPSEL_1 | DPSEL_0 |
|--|--|--|--|--|---------|---------|---------|

**DPSEL\_X**

Selects one of the eight Data Pointers.

## 6.1.3. Addressing Modes

There are five general addressing modes operating on bytes. One of these five addressing modes, however, operates on both bytes and bits:

- Register
- Direct (both bytes and bits)
- Register-indirect
- Immediate
- Base register plus index-register indirect

The following list summarizes, which memory spaces may be accessed by each of the addressing modes:

### Register Addressing

R0 ... R7  
ACC, B, CY (bit), DPTR

### Direct Addressing

RAM (low part)  
Special Function Registers

### Register-indirect Addressing

RAM (@R1, @R0, SP)

### Immediate Addressing

Program Memory

### Base Register plus Index-Register Indirect Addressing

Program Memory (@DPTR + A, @PC + A)

address. The highest-order bit of this byte selects one of two groups of addresses: values between 00<sub>H</sub> ... 7F<sub>H</sub> access internal RAM locations, while values between 80<sub>H</sub> ... 0FF<sub>H</sub> access one of the special function registers.

### 6.1.3.3. Register-indirect Addressing

Register-indirect addressing uses the contents of either R0 or R1 (in the selected register bank) as a pointer to locations in the 256 bytes of internal RAM. Note that the special function registers are not accessible by this method.

Execution of PUSH and POP instructions also use register-indirect addressing. The stack pointer may reside anywhere in internal RAM.

### 6.1.3.4. Immediate Addressing

Immediate addressing allows constants to be part of the opcode instruction in program memory.

An additional byte is appended to the instruction to hold the source variable. In the assembly language and instruction set, a number sign (#) precedes the value to be used, which may refer to a constant, an expression, or a symbolic name.

### 6.1.3.5. Base Register plus Index Register-indirect Addressing

Base register plus index register-indirect addressing allows a byte to be accessed from program memory via an indirect move from the location whose address is the sum of a base register (DPTR or PC) and index register, ACC. This mode facilitates accessing to look-up table resident in program memory.

### 6.1.3.1. Register Addressing

Register addressing accesses the eight working registers (R0 ... R7) of the selected register bank. The PSW register flags RS1 and RS0 determine which register bank is enabled. The least significant three bits of the instruction opcode indicate which register is to be used. ACC, B, DPTR and CY, the Boolean processor accumulator, can also be addressed as registers.

### 6.1.3.2. Direct Addressing

Direct byte addressing specifies an on-chip RAM location (only low part) or a special function register. Direct addressing is the only method of accessing the special function registers. An additional byte is appended to the instruction opcode to provide the memory location

## 6.2. Ports and I/O-Pins

There are 34 Port pins available, out of which are 24 I/O-pins are configured as three 8-bit ports P0, P1, and P3. Port 4, consists of 6 I/O bits, out of which 3 are available in PSDIP52-2, all 6 bits are available in rest of the packages. Each pin can be individually and independently programmed as input or output and each can be configured dynamically. One 4-bit-port P2 is input only.

An instruction that uses a port's bit/byte as a source operand reads a value that is the logical AND of the last value written to the bit/byte and the polarity being applied to the pin/pins by an external device (this assumes that none of the processor's electrical specifications are being violated). An instruction that reads a bit/byte, operates on the content, and writes the result back to the bit/byte, reads the last value written to the bit/byte instead of the logic level at the pin/pins. Pins comprising a single port can be made a mixed collection of inputs and outputs by writing a 'one' to each pin that is to be an input. Each time an instruction uses a port as the destination, the operation must write 'ones' to those bits that correspond to the input pins. An input to a port pin needs not to be synchronized to the oscillator.

All the port latches have 'one' s written to them by the reset function. If a 'zero' is subsequently written to a

port latch, it can be reconfigured as an input by writing a 'one' to it.

The instructions that perform a read of, operation on, and write to a port's bit/byte are INC, DEC, CPL, JBC, SETB, CLR, MOV P.X, CJNE, DJNZ, ANL, ORL, and XRL. The source read by these operations is the last value that was written to the port, without regard to the levels being applied at the pins. This insures that bits written to a 'one' (for use as inputs) are not inadvertently cleared.

Port 0 has an open-drain output. Writing a 'one' to the bit latch leaves the output transistor off, so the pin floats.

In that condition it can be used as a high-impedance input. Port 0 is considered 'true bidirectional', because when configured as an input it floats.

Ports 1, 3 and 4 have 'quasi-bidirectional' output drivers.

In ports P1, P3 and P4 the output drivers provide source current for one system clock period if, and only if, software updates the bit in the output latch from a 'zero' to an 'one'. Sourcing current only on 'zero to one' transition prevents a pin, programmed as an input, from sourcing current into the external device that is driving the input pin.

**Table 6–2:**

| Port      | I/O | Default Function | Alternate Function 2 |                      | Alternate Function 3 |          |
|-----------|-----|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------|
|           |     |                  | Toggle               | Function             | Toggle               | Function |
|           |     |                  | Control bit          | Function             | Control bit          | Function |
| P0(0...7) | I/O | Port pin         | –                    | –                    | –                    | –        |
| P1(0)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E0)             | PWM 8 bit channel 0  | –                    | –        |
| P1(1)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E1)             | PWM 8 bit channel 1  | –                    | –        |
| P1(2)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E2)             | PWM 8 bit channel 2  | –                    | –        |
| P1(3)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E3)             | PWM 8 bit channel 3  | –                    | –        |
| P1(4)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E4)             | PWM 8 bit channel 4  | –                    | –        |
| P1(5)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E5)             | PWM 8 bit channel 5  | –                    | –        |
| P1(6)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E6)             | PWM 14 bit channel 0 | –                    | –        |
| P1(7)     | I/O | Port pin         | PWME(E7)             | PWM 14 bit channel 1 | –                    | –        |
| P2(0)     | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD0)          | ADC channel 0        | –                    | –        |
| P2(1)     | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD1)          | ADC channel 1        | –                    | –        |

Table 6–2: , continued

| Port                | I/O | Default Function | Alternate Function 2      |                       | Alternate Function 3          |                     |
|---------------------|-----|------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
|                     |     |                  | Toggle                    | Function              | Toggle                        | Function            |
|                     |     |                  | Control bit               | Function              | Control bit                   | Function            |
| P2(2)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD2)               | ADC channel 2         | –                             | –                   |
| P2(3)               | I   | Port pin         | CADCCO(AD3)               | ADC channel 3         | –                             | –                   |
| P3(0)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR0(O_E_P3_0)           | ODD/Even indicator    | –                             | –                   |
| P3(1)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | External extra Int 0  | Port output mode              | TXD                 |
| P3(2)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | External interrupt 0  | –                             | –                   |
| P3(3)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | External interrupt 1  | –                             | –                   |
| P3(4)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | Timer/counter 0 input | –                             | –                   |
| P3(5)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | Timer/counter 1 input | –                             | –                   |
| P3(6)               | I/O | Port pin         | –                         | –                     | –                             | –                   |
| P3(7)               | I/O | Port pin         | Port input mode           | External extra Int 1  | Port input mode               | RXD                 |
| P4(0) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A17              | CSCR1(A17_P4_0)           | Port pin              | –                             | –                   |
| P4(1) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A18              | CSCR1(A18_P4_1)           | Port pin              | –                             | –                   |
| P4(2)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR1(ENARW)              | Read signal           | –                             | –                   |
| P4(3)               | I/O | Port pin         | CSCR1(ENARW)              | Write signal          | –                             | –                   |
| P4(4) <sup>1)</sup> | I/O | A19              | CSCR1(A19_P4_4)           | Port pin              | –                             | –                   |
| P4(7)               | I/O | Port/Vs in       | CSCR0(VS_OE,<br>P4_7_ALT) | Vs output             | CSCR0<br>(VS_OE,<br>P4_7_ALT) | OddEven out-<br>put |

1) Not available in PSDIP52-2.

It is not allowed to drive Port 3.6 to logic low level while reset state changes from the active to inactive state otherwise a special test mode is activated.

Secondary functions can be selected individually and independently for the pins of Port 1 and 3. Further information on Port 1's secondary functions is given in Section 14.. P3 generates the secondary control signals automatically as long as the pin corresponding to the appropriate signal is programmed as an input, i. e. if the corresponding bit latch in the P3 special function register contains a 'one'.

### Read Modify-Write Feature

'Read-modify-write' commands are instructions that read a value, possibly change it, and then rewrite it to the latch. When the destination operand is a port or a port bit, these instructions read the latch rather than the pin. The read-modify-write instructions are listed in Table 6–3.

The read-modify-write instructions are directed to the latch rather than the pin in order to avoid a possible misinterpretation of the voltage level at the pin. For example, a port bit might be used to drive the base of a transistor. When a 'one' is written to the bit, the transistor is turned on.

If the CPU then reads the same port bit at the pin rather than the latch, it will read the base voltage of the transistor and interpret it as a 0. Reading the latch rather than the pin will return the correct value of 'one'.

Timer/Counter 0 Mode 3: Two 8-Bit Counters

**Table 6–3:** Read-Modify-Write Instructions

| Mnemonic                        | Description                       | Example         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>ANL</b>                      | logical AND                       | ANL P1, A       |
| <b>ORL</b>                      | logical OR                        | ORL P2, A       |
| <b>XRL</b>                      | logical EX – OR                   | XRL P3, A       |
| <b>JBC</b>                      | jump if bit = 1 and clear bit     | JBC P1.1, LABEL |
| <b>CPL</b>                      | complement bit                    | CPL P3.0        |
| <b>INC</b>                      | increment                         | INC P1          |
| <b>DEC</b>                      | decrement                         | DEC P1          |
| <b>DJNZ</b>                     | decrement and jump if not zero    | DJNZ P3, LABEL  |
| <b>MOV PX.Y, C<sup>1)</sup></b> | move carry bit to bit Y of Port X | MOV P1.7, C     |
| <b>CLR PX.Y<sup>1)</sup></b>    | clear bit Y of Port X             | CLR P2.6        |
| <b>SET PX.Y<sup>1)</sup></b>    | set bit Y of Port X               | SET P3.5        |

1) The instruction reads the port byte (all 8 bits), modifies the addressed bit, then writes the new byte back to the latch.

### 6.3. Instruction Set

The assembly language uses the same instruction set and the same instruction opcodes as the 8051 micro-computer family.

#### 6.3.1. Notes on Data Addressing Modes

- Rn – Working register R0 - R7.
- direct – 128 internal RAM-locations, any I/O-port, control or status register.
- @Ri – Indirect internal RAM-location addressed by register R0 or R1.
- #data – 8-bit constant included in instruction.
- #data 16 – 16-bit constant included as bytes 2 & 3 of instruction.
- bit – 128 software flags, any I/O-pin, control or status bit in special function registers.

Operations working on external data memory (MOVX ...) are used to access the extended internal data RAM (XRAM).

#### 6.3.2. Notes on Program Addressing Modes

- addr 16 – Destination address for LCALL & LJMP may be anywhere within the program memory address space.
- addr 11 – Destination address for ACALL & AJMP will be within the same 2 Kbyte of the following instruction.
- rel – SJMP and all conditional jumps include an 8-bit offset byte. Range is +127/-128 bytes relative to first byte of the following instruction.

## 6.3.3. Instruction Set Description

Table 6–4: Arithmetic Operations

| Mnemonic    |                  | Description                                 | Byte |
|-------------|------------------|---|------|
| <b>ADD</b>  | <b>A, Rn</b>     | Add register to Accumulator                 | 1    |
| <b>ADD</b>  | <b>A, direct</b> | Add direct byte to Accumulator              | 2    |
| <b>ADD</b>  | <b>A, @Ri</b>    | Add indirect RAM to Accumulator             | 1    |
| <b>ADD</b>  | <b>A, #data</b>  | Add immediate data to Accumulator           | 2    |
| <b>ADDC</b> | <b>A, Rn</b>     | Add register to Accumulator with Carry flag | 1    |
| <b>ADDC</b> | <b>A, direct</b> | Add direct byte to A with Carry flag        | 2    |
| <b>ADDC</b> | <b>A, @Ri</b>    | Add indirect RAM to A with Carry flag       | 1    |
| <b>ADDC</b> | <b>A, #data</b>  | Add immediate data to A with Carry flag     | 2    |
| <b>SUBB</b> | <b>A, Rn</b>     | Subtract register from A with Borrow        | 1    |
| <b>SUBB</b> | <b>A, direct</b> | Subtract direct byte from A with Borrow     | 2    |
| <b>SUBB</b> | <b>A, @Ri</b>    | Subtract indirect RAM from A with Borrow    | 1    |
| <b>SUBB</b> | <b>A, #data</b>  | Subtract immediate data from A with Borrow  | 2    |
| <b>INC</b>  | <b>A</b>         | Increment Accumulator                       | 1    |
| <b>INC</b>  | <b>Rn</b>        | Increment register                          | 1    |
| <b>INC</b>  | <b>direct</b>    | Increment direct byte                       | 2    |
| <b>INC</b>  | <b>@Ri</b>       | Increment indirect RAM                      | 1    |
| <b>DEC</b>  | <b>A</b>         | Decrement Accumulator                       | 1    |
| <b>DEC</b>  | <b>Rn</b>        | Decrement register                          | 1    |
| <b>DEC</b>  | <b>direct</b>    | Decrement direct byte                       | 2    |
| <b>DEC</b>  | <b>@Ri</b>       | Decrement indirect RAM                      | 1    |
| <b>INC</b>  | <b>DPTR</b>      | Increment Data Pointer                      | 1    |
| <b>MUL</b>  | <b>AB</b>        | Multiply A & B                              | 1    |
| <b>DIV</b>  | <b>AB</b>        | Divide A & B                                | 1    |
| <b>DA</b>   | <b>A</b>         | Decimal Adjust Accumulator                  | 1    |

**Table 6–5:** Logical Operations

| <b>Mnemonic</b>              | <b>Description</b>                         | <b>Byte</b> |
|------------------------------|--|-------------|
| <b>ANL     A, Rn</b>         | AND register to Accumulator                | 1           |
| <b>ANL     A, direct</b>     | AND direct byte to Accumulator             | 2           |
| <b>ANL     A, @Ri</b>        | AND indirect RAM to Accumulator            | 1           |
| <b>ANL     A, #data</b>      | AND immediate data to Accumulator          | 2           |
| <b>ANL     direct, A</b>     | AND Accumulator to direct byte             | 2           |
| <b>ANL     direct, #data</b> | AND immediate data to direct byte          | 3           |
| <b>ORL     A, Rn</b>         | OR register to Accumulator                 | 1           |
| <b>ORL     A, direct</b>     | OR direct byte to Accumulator              | 2           |
| <b>ORL     A, @Ri</b>        | OR indirect RAM to Accumulator             | 1           |
| <b>ORL     A, #data</b>      | OR immediate data to Accumulator           | 2           |
| <b>ORL     direct, A</b>     | OR Accumulator to direct byte              | 2           |
| <b>ORL     direct, #data</b> | OR immediate data to direct byte           | 3           |
| <b>XRL     A, Rn</b>         | Exclusive-OR register to Accumulator       | 1           |
| <b>XRL     A, direct</b>     | Exclusive-OR direct byte to Accumulator    | 2           |
| <b>XRL     A, @Ri</b>        | Exclusive-OR indirect RAM to Accumulator   | 1           |
| <b>XRL     A, #data</b>      | Exclusive-OR immediate data to Accumulator | 2           |
| <b>XRL     direct, A</b>     | Exclusive-OR Accumulator to direct byte    | 2           |
| <b>XRL     direct, #data</b> | Exclusive-OR immediate data to direct      | 3           |
| <b>CLR     A</b>             | Clear Accumulator                          | 1           |
| <b>CPL     A</b>             | Complement Accumulator                     | 1           |
| <b>RL       A</b>            | Rotate Accumulator left                    | 1           |
| <b>RLC     A</b>             | Rotate A left through the Carry flag       | 1           |
| <b>RR       A</b>            | Rotate Accumulator right                   | 1           |
| <b>RRC     A</b>             | Rotate A right through Carry flag          | 1           |
| <b>SWAP    A</b>             | Swap nibbles within the Accumulator        | 1           |

Table 6–6: Data Transfer Operations

| Mnemonic |                | Description  | Byte |
|----------|----------------|--|------|
| MOV      | A, Rn          | Move register to Accumulator                                 | 1    |
| MOV      | A, direct      | Move direct byte to Accumulator                              | 2    |
| MOV      | A, @Ri         | Move indirect RAM to Accumulator                             | 1    |
| MOV      | A, #data       | Move immediate data to Accumulator                           | 2    |
| MOV      | Rn, A          | Move Accumulator to register                                 | 1    |
| MOV      | Rn, direct     | Move direct byte to register                                 | 2    |
| MOV      | Rn, #data      | Move immediate data to register                              | 2    |
| MOV      | direct, A      | Move Accumulator to direct byte                              | 2    |
| MOV      | direct, Rn     | Move register to direct byte                                 | 2    |
| MOV      | direct, direct | Move direct byte to direct                                   | 3    |
| MOV      | direct, @Ri    | Move indirect RAM to direct byte                             | 2    |
| MOV      | direct, #data  | Move immediate data to direct byte                           | 3    |
| MOV      | @Ri, A         | Move Accumulator to indirect RAM                             | 1    |
| MOV      | @Ri, direct    | Move direct byte to indirect RAM                             | 2    |
| MOV      | @Ri, #data     | Move immediate data to indirect RAM                          | 2    |
| MOV      | DPTR, #data 16 | Load Data Pointer with a 16-bit constant                     | 3    |
| MOVC     | A@A + DPTR     | Move Code byte relative to DPTR to Accumulator               | 1    |
| MOVC     | A@A + PC       | Move Code byte relative to PC to Accumulator                 | 1    |
| MOVX     | A, @Ri         | Move External RAM (8-bit addr) to Accumulator <sup>1)</sup>  | 1    |
| MOVX     | A, @DPTR       | Move External RAM (16-bit addr) to Accumulator               | 1    |
| MOVX     | @Ri, A         | Move A to External RAM (8-bit addr) <sup>1)</sup>            | 1    |
| MOVX     | @DPTR, A       | Move A to External RAM (16-bit addr)                         | 1    |
| PUSH     | direct         | Push direct byte onto stack                                  | 2    |
| POP      | direct         | Pop direct byte from stack                                   | 2    |
| XCH      | A, Rn          | Exchange register with Accumulator                           | 1    |
| XCH      | A, direct      | Exchange direct byte with Accumulator                        | 2    |
| XCH      | A, @Ri         | Exchange indirect RAM with Accumulator                       | 1    |
| XCHD     | A, @Ri         | Exchange low-order digital indirect RAM with A <sup>1)</sup> | 1    |

1) not applicable



**Table 6–7:** Boolean Variable Manipulation

| Mnemonic    |                | Description                           | Byte |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|------|
| <b>CLR</b>  | <b>C</b>       | Clear Carry flag                      | 1    |
| <b>CLR</b>  | <b>bit</b>     | Clear direct bit                      | 2    |
| <b>SETB</b> | <b>C</b>       | Set Carry flag                        | 1    |
| <b>SETB</b> | <b>bit</b>     | Set direct bit                        | 2    |
| <b>CPL</b>  | <b>C</b>       | Complement Carry flag                 | 1    |
| <b>CPL</b>  | <b>bit</b>     | Complement direct bit                 | 2    |
| <b>ANL</b>  | <b>C, bit</b>  | AND direct bit to Carry flag          | 2    |
| <b>ANL</b>  | <b>C, /bit</b> | AND complement of direct bit to Carry | 2    |
| <b>ORL</b>  | <b>C, bit</b>  | OR direct bit to Carry flag           | 2    |
| <b>ORL</b>  | <b>C, /bit</b> | OR complement of direct bit to Carry  | 2    |
| <b>MOV</b>  | <b>C, bit</b>  | Move direct bit to Carry flag         | 2    |
| <b>MOV</b>  | <b>bit, C</b>  | Move Carry flag to direct bit         | 2    |

**Table 6–8:** Program and Machine Control Operations

| Mnemonic                           | Description   | Byte |
|------------------------------------|---|------|
| <b>ACALL</b> <b>addr 11</b>        | Absolute subroutine call                            | 2    |
| <b>LCALL</b> <b>addr 16</b>        | Long subroutine call                                | 3    |
| <b>RET</b>                         | Return from subroutine                              | 1    |
| <b>RETI</b>                        | Return from interrupt                               | 1    |
| <b>AJMP</b> <b>addr 11</b>         | Absolute jump                                       | 2    |
| <b>LJMP</b> <b>addr 16</b>         | Long jump   | 3    |
| <b>SJMP</b> <b>rel</b>             | Short jump (relative addr)                          | 2    |
| <b>JMP</b> <b>@A + DPTR</b>        | Jump indirect relative to the DPTR                  | 1    |
| <b>JZ</b> <b>rel</b>               | Jump if Accumulator is zero                         | 2    |
| <b>JNZ</b> <b>rel</b>              | Jump if Accumulator is not zero                     | 2    |
| <b>JC</b> <b>rel</b>               | Jump if Carry flag is set                           | 2    |
| <b>JNC</b> <b>rel</b>              | Jump if Carry flag is not set                       | 2    |
| <b>JB</b> <b>bit, rel</b>          | Jump if direct bit set                              | 3    |
| <b>JNB</b> <b>bit, rel</b>         | Jump if direct bit not set                          | 3    |
| <b>JBC</b> <b>bit, rel</b>         | Jump if direct bit is set and clear bit             | 3    |
| <b>CJNE</b> <b>A, direct rel</b>   | Compare direct to A and jump if not equal           | 3    |
| <b>CJNE</b> <b>A, #data, rel</b>   | Compare immediate to A and jump if not equal        | 3    |
| <b>CJNE</b> <b>Rn, #data, rel</b>  | Compare immediate to register and jump if not equal | 3    |
| <b>CJNE</b> <b>@Ri, #data, rel</b> | Compare immediate to indirect and jump if not equal | 3    |
| <b>DJNZ</b> <b>Rn, rel</b>         | Decrement register and jump if not zero             | 2    |
| <b>DJNZ</b> <b>direct, rel</b>     | Decrement direct and jump if not zero               | 3    |
| <b>NOP</b>                         | No operation  | 1    |

### 6.3.4. Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands            |
|----------|-----------------|----------|---------------------|
| 00       | 1               | NOP      | –                   |
| 01       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr           |
| 02       | 3               | LJMP     | code addr           |
| 03       | 1               | RR       | A                   |
| 04       | 1               | INC      | A                   |
| 05       | 2               | INC      | data addr           |
| 06       | 1               | INC      | @R0                 |
| 07       | 1               | INC      | @R1                 |
| 08       | 1               | INC      | R0                  |
| 09       | 1               | INC      | R1                  |
| 0A       | 1               | INC      | R2                  |
| 0B       | 1               | INC      | R3                  |
| 0C       | 1               | INC      | R4                  |
| 0D       | 1               | INC      | R5                  |
| 0E       | 1               | INC      | R6                  |
| 0F       | 1               | INC      | R7                  |
| 10       | 3               | JBC      | bit addr, code addr |
| 11       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr           |
| 12       | 3               | LCALL    | code addr           |
| 13       | 1               | RRC      | A                   |
| 14       | 1               | DEC      | A                   |
| 15       | 2               | DEC      | data addr           |
| 16       | 1               | DEC      | @R0                 |
| 17       | 1               | DEC      | @R1                 |
| 18       | 1               | DEC      | R0                  |
| 19       | 1               | DEC      | R1                  |
| 1A       | 1               | DEC      | R2                  |
| 1B       | 1               | DEC      | R3                  |
| 1C       | 1               | DEC      | R4                  |
| 1D       | 1               | DEC      | R5                  |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands            |
|----------|-----------------|----------|---------------------|
| 1E       | 1               | DEC      | R6                  |
| 1F       | 1               | DEC      | R7                  |
| 20       | 3               | JB       | bit addr, code addr |
| 21       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr           |
| 22       | 1               | RET      | –                   |
| 23       | 1               | RL       | A                   |
| 24       | 2               | ADD      | A, #data            |
| 25       | 2               | ADD      | A, data addr        |
| 26       | 1               | ADD      | A, @R0              |
| 27       | 1               | ADD      | A, @R1              |
| 28       | 1               | ADD      | A, R0               |
| 29       | 1               | ADD      | A, R1               |
| 2A       | 1               | ADD      | A, R2               |
| 2B       | 1               | ADD      | A, R3               |
| 2C       | 1               | ADD      | A, R4               |
| 2D       | 1               | ADD      | A, R5               |
| 2E       | 1               | ADD      | A, R6               |
| 2F       | 1               | ADD      | A, R7               |
| 30       | 3               | JNB      | bit addr, code addr |
| 31       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr           |
| 32       | 1               | RETI     | –                   |
| 33       | 1               | RLC      | A                   |
| 34       | 2               | ADDC     | A, #data            |
| 35       | 2               | ADDC     | A, data addr        |
| 36       | 1               | ADDC     | A, @R0              |
| 37       | 1               | ADDC     | A, @R1              |
| 38       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R0               |
| 39       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R1               |
| 3A       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R2               |
| 3B       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R3               |
| 3C       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R4               |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands         |
|----------|-----------------|----------|------------------|
| 3D       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R5            |
| 3E       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R6            |
| 3F       | 1               | ADDC     | A, R7            |
| 40       | 2               | JC       | code addr        |
| 41       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr        |
| 42       | 2               | ORL      | data addr., A    |
| 43       | 3               | ORL      | data addr, #data |
| 44       | 2               | ORL      | A, #data         |
| 45       | 2               | ORL      | A, data addr     |
| 46       | 1               | ORL      | A, @R0           |
| 47       | 1               | ORL      | A, @R1           |
| 48       | 1               | ORL      | A, R0            |
| 49       | 1               | ORL      | A, R1            |
| 4A       | 1               | ORL      | A, R2            |
| 4B       | 1               | ORL      | A, R3            |
| 4C       | 1               | ORL      | A, R4            |
| 4D       | 1               | ORL      | A, R5            |
| 4E       | 1               | ORL      | A, R6            |
| 4F       | 1               | ORL      | A, R7            |
| 50       | 2               | JNC      | code addr        |
| 51       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr        |
| 52       | 2               | ANL      | data addr, A     |
| 53       | 3               | ANL      | data addr, #data |
| 54       | 2               | ANL      | A, #data         |
| 55       | 2               | ANL      | A, data addr     |
| 56       | 1               | ANL      | A, @R0           |
| 57       | 1               | ANL      | A, @R1           |
| 58       | 1               | ANL      | A, R0            |
| 59       | 1               | ANL      | A, R1            |
| 5A       | 1               | ANL      | A, R2            |
| 5B       | 1               | ANL      | A, R3            |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands         |
|----------|-----------------|----------|------------------|
| 5C       | 1               | ANL      | A, R4            |
| 5D       | 1               | ANL      | A, R5            |
| 5E       | 1               | ANL      | A, R6            |
| 5F       | 1               | ANL      | A, R7            |
| 60       | 2               | JZ       | code addr        |
| 61       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr.       |
| 62       | 2               | XRL      | data addr, A     |
| 63       | 3               | XRL      | data addr, #data |
| 64       | 2               | XRL      | A, #data         |
| 65       | 2               | XRL      | A, data addr     |
| 66       | 1               | XRL      | A, @R0           |
| 67       | 1               | XRL      | A, @R1           |
| 68       | 1               | XRL      | A, R0            |
| 69       | 1               | XRL      | A, R1            |
| 6A       | 1               | XRL      | A, R2            |
| 6B       | 1               | XRL      | A, R3            |
| 6C       | 1               | XRL      | A, R4            |
| 6D       | 1               | XRL      | A, R5            |
| 6E       | 1               | XRL      | A, R6            |
| 6F       | 1               | XRL      | A, R7            |
| 70       | 2               | JNZ      | code addr        |
| 71       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr        |
| 72       | 2               | ORL      | C, bit addr      |
| 73       | 1               | JMP      | @A + DPTR        |
| 74       | 2               | MOV      | A, #data         |
| 75       | 3               | MOV      | data addr, #data |
| 76       | 2               | MOV      | @R0, #data       |
| 77       | 2               | MOV      | @R1, #data       |
| 78       | 2               | MOV      | R0, #data        |
| 79       | 2               | MOV      | R1, #data        |
| 7A       | 2               | MOV      | R2, #data        |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands             |
|----------|-----------------|----------|----------------------|
| 7B       | 2               | MOV      | R3, #data            |
| 7C       | 2               | MOV      | R4, #data            |
| 7D       | 2               | MOV      | R5, #data            |
| 7E       | 2               | MOV      | R6, #data            |
| 7F       | 2               | MOV      | R7, #data            |
| 80       | 2               | SJMP     | code addr            |
| 81       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr            |
| 82       | 2               | ANL      | C, bit addr          |
| 83       | 1               | MOVC     | A, @A + PC           |
| 84       | 1               | DIV      | AB                   |
| 85       | 3               | MOV      | data addr, data addr |
| 86       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, @R0       |
| 87       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, @R1       |
| 88       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R0        |
| 89       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R1        |
| 8A       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R2        |
| 8B       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R3        |
| 8C       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R4        |
| 8D       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R5        |
| 8E       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R6        |
| 8F       | 2               | MOV      | data addr, R7        |
| 90       | 3               | MOV      | DPTR, #data 16       |
| 91       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr            |
| 92       | 2               | MOV      | bit addr, C          |
| 93       | 1               | MOVC     | A, @A + DPTR         |
| 94       | 2               | SUBB     | A, #data             |
| 95       | 2               | SUBB     | A, data addr         |
| 96       | 1               | SUBB     | A, @R0               |
| 97       | 1               | SUBB     | A, @R1               |
| 98       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R0                |
| 99       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R1                |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands                |
|----------|-----------------|----------|-------------------------|
| 9A       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R2                   |
| 9B       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R3                   |
| 9C       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R4                   |
| 9D       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R5                   |
| 9E       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R6                   |
| 9F       | 1               | SUBB     | A, R7                   |
| A0       | 2               | ORL      | C, /bit addr            |
| A1       | 2               | AJMP     | code addr               |
| A2       | 2               | MOV      | C, bit addr             |
| A3       | 1               | INC      | DPTR                    |
| A4       | 1               | MUL      | AB                      |
| A5       | –               | reserved | –                       |
| A6       | 2               | MOV      | @R0, data addr          |
| A7       | 2               | MOV      | @R1, data addr          |
| A8       | 2               | MOV      | R0, data addr           |
| A9       | 2               | MOV      | R1, data addr           |
| AA       | 2               | MOV      | R2, data addr           |
| AB       | 2               | MOV      | R3, data addr           |
| AC       | 2               | MOV      | R4, data addr           |
| AD       | 2               | MOV      | R5, data addr           |
| AE       | 2               | MOV      | R6, data addr           |
| AF       | 2               | MOV      | R7, data addr           |
| B0       | 2               | ANL      | C, /bit addr            |
| B1       | 2               | ACALL    | code addr               |
| B2       | 2               | CPL      | bit addr                |
| B3       | 1               | CPL      | C                       |
| B4       | 3               | CJNE     | A, #data, code addr     |
| B5       | 3               | CJNE     | A, data addr, code addr |
| B6       | 3               | CJNE     | @R0, #data, code addr   |
| B7       | 3               | CJNE     | @R1, #data, code addr   |
| B8       | 3               | CJNE     | R0, #data, code addr    |



**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic       | Operands             |
|----------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| B9       | 3               | CJNE           | R1, #data, code addr |
| BA       | 3               | CJNE           | R2, #data, code addr |
| BB       | 3               | CJNE           | R3, #data, code addr |
| BC       | 3               | CJNE           | R4, #data, code addr |
| BD       | 3               | CJNE           | R5, #data, code addr |
| BE       | 3               | CJNE           | R6, #data, code addr |
| BF       | 3               | CJNE           | R7, #data, code addr |
| C0       | 2               | PUSH           | data addr            |
| C1       | 2               | AJMP           | code addr            |
| C2       | 2               | CLR            | bit addr             |
| C3       | 1               | CLR            | C                    |
| C4       | 1               | SWAP           | A                    |
| C5       | 2               | XCH            | A, data addr         |
| C6       | 1               | XCH            | A, @R0               |
| C7       | 1               | XCH            | A, @R1               |
| C8       | 1               | XCH            | A, R0                |
| C9       | 1               | XCH            | A, R1                |
| CA       | 1               | XCH            | A, R2                |
| CB       | 1               | XCH            | A, R3                |
| CC       | 1               | XCH            | A, R4                |
| CD       | 1               | XCH            | A, R5                |
| CE       | 1               | XCH            | A, R6                |
| CF       | 1               | XCH            | A, R7                |
| D0       | 2               | POP            | data addr            |
| D1       | 2               | ACALL          | code addr            |
| D2       | 2               | SETB           | bit addr             |
| D3       | 1               | SETB           | C                    |
| D4       | 1               | DA             | A                    |
| D5       | 3               | DJNZ           | data addr, code addr |
| D6       | –               | not applicable | –                    |
| D7       | –               | not applicable | –                    |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic       | Operands      |
|----------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| D8       | 2               | DJNZ           | R0, code addr |
| D9       | 2               | DJNZ           | R1, code addr |
| DA       | 2               | DJNZ           | R2, code addr |
| DB       | 2               | DJNZ           | R3, code addr |
| DC       | 2               | DJNZ           | R4, code addr |
| DD       | 2               | DJNZ           | R5, code addr |
| DE       | 2               | DJNZ           | R6, code addr |
| DF       | 2               | DJNZ           | R7, code addr |
| E0       | 1               | MOVX           | A, @DPTR      |
| E1       | 2               | AJMP           | code addr     |
| E2       | –               | not applicable | –             |
| E3       | –               | not applicable | –             |
| E4       | 1               | CLR            | A             |
| E5       | 2               | MOV            | A, data addr  |
| E6       | 1               | MOV            | A, @R0        |
| E7       | 1               | MOV            | A, @R1        |
| E8       | 1               | MOV            | A, R0         |
| E9       | 1               | MOV            | A, R1         |
| EA       | 1               | MOV            | A, R2         |
| EB       | 1               | MOV            | A, R3         |
| EC       | 1               | MOV            | A, R4         |
| ED       | 1               | MOV            | A, R5         |
| EE       | 1               | MOV            | A, R6         |
| EF       | 1               | MOV            | A, R7         |
| F0       | 1               | MOVX           | @DPTR, A      |
| F1       | 2               | ACALL          | code addr     |
| F2       | –               | not applicable | –             |
| F3       | –               | not applicable | –             |
| F4       | 1               | CPL            | A             |
| F5       | 2               | MOV            | data addr, A  |
| F6       | 1               | MOV            | @R0, A        |

**Table 6–9:** Instruction Opcodes in Hexadecimal Order, continued

| Hex Code | Number of Bytes | Mnemonic | Operands |
|----------|-----------------|----------|----------|
| F7       | 1               | MOV      | @R1, A   |
| F8       | 1               | MOV      | R0, A    |
| F9       | 1               | MOV      | R1, A    |
| FA       | 1               | MOV      | R2, A    |
| FB       | 1               | MOV      | R3, A    |
| FC       | 1               | MOV      | R4, A    |
| FD       | 1               | MOV      | R5, A    |
| FE       | 1               | MOV      | R6, A    |
| FF       | 1               | MOV      | R7, A    |

## 7. Interrupts

### 7.1. Interrupt System

External events and the real-time on-chip peripherals require CPU service asynchronous to the execution of any particular section of code. To couple the asynchronous activities of these functions to normal program execution, a sophisticated multiple-source, four-priority-level, nested interrupt system is provided.

### 7.2. Interrupt Sources

The TVT processor is capable of handling up to 24 interrupt sources. In SDA 55xx 17 interrupts are implemented rest are reserved for future use. Processor acknowledges interrupt requests from 17 sources. Two external sources via the  $\overline{\text{INT0}}$  and  $\overline{\text{INT1}}$  pins and two additional external interrupts  $\overline{\text{INTX0}}$  and  $\overline{\text{INTX1}}$  are provided. Peripherals also use interrupts. One from each of the two internal counters, one from the analog digital converter and one from UART. In addition there are four Acquisition related interrupts, two display related interrupts and one interrupt indicating change of channel, two interrupts are generated by WDT and PWM overflow in timer mode.

Timer 0 and Timer 1 interrupts are generated by TCON.TF0 and TCON.TF1 following a rollover in their respective registers (except in Mode 3 when TCON.TH0 controls the Timer 1 interrupt).

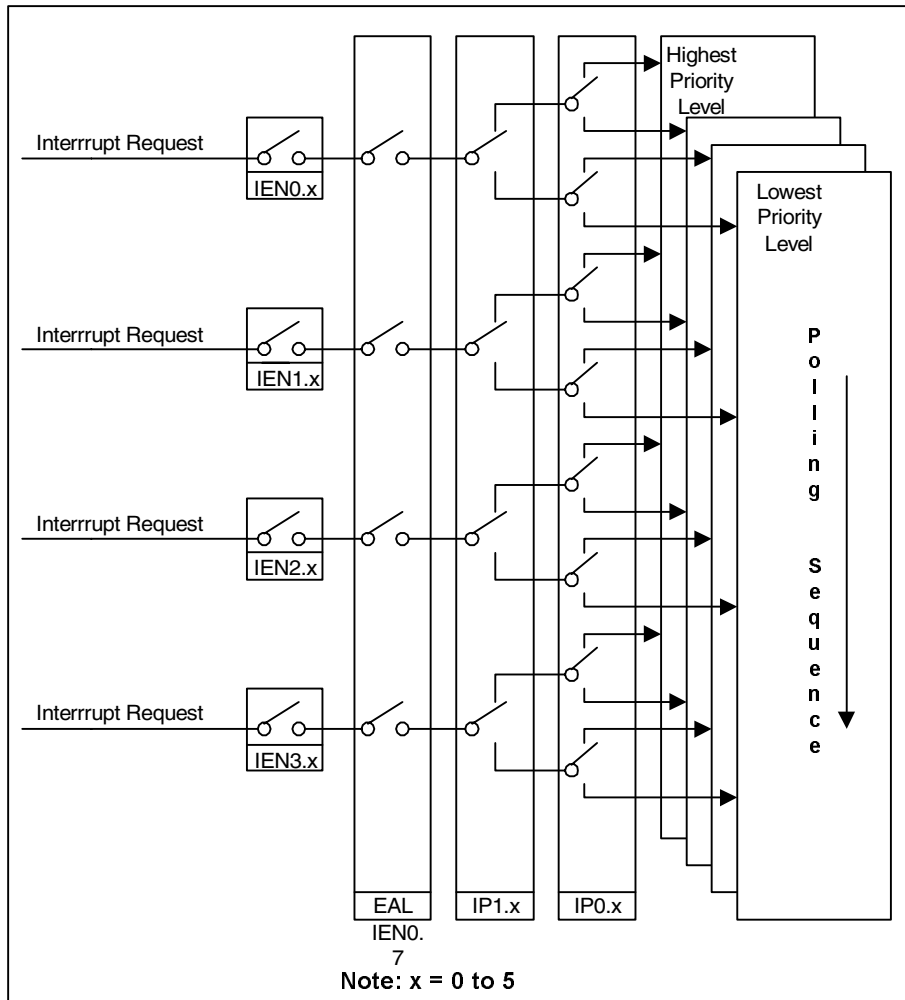
The external interrupts  $\overline{\text{INT0}}$  and  $\overline{\text{INT1}}$  are either level or edge triggered depending on bits in TCON and IRCON. Other external interrupts are level sensitive and active high. Any edge triggering will need to be taken care of by individual peripherals.

$\overline{\text{INTX0}}$  and  $\overline{\text{INTX1}}$  can be programed to be either negative or positive edge triggered.

The analog digital converter interrupt is generated on completion of the analog digital conversion.

### 7.3. Overview

A simple overview of the interrupt handling is shown in **Fig. 7–1**.



**Fig. 7–1:** Interrupt handling overview

7.4. Enabling Interrupts

Interrupts are enabled through a set of Interrupt Enable registers (IEN0, IEN1, IEN2, IEN3).

Bits 0 to 5 of the Interrupt Enable registers each individually enable/disable a particular interrupt source. Overall control is provided by bit 7 of IEN0 (EAL). When EAL is set to ‘0’, all interrupts are disabled: when EAL is set to ‘1’, interrupts are individually enabled or disabled through the other bits of the Interrupt Enable Registers. EAL may however be overridden by the DISINT signal which provides a global disable signal for the interrupt controller.

7.4.1. Interrupt Enable Registers (IEN0, IEN1, IEN2, IEN3)

The processor has 4 Interrupt Enable registers. The details of the registers are as follows. For each bit in these registers, a 1 enables the corresponding interrupt and a 0 disables it.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

IEN0 bit addressable

SFR Address A8<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|     |    |     |    |     |     |     |     |
|-----|----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| EAL | -- | EAD | EU | ET1 | EX1 | ET0 | EX0 |
|-----|----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| EAL | Enable All Interrupts. When set to ‘0’, all interrupts are disabled. When set to ‘1’, interrupts are individually enabled/disabled according to their respective bit selection. |
| --  | Reserved.   |
| EAD | Enable or disable Analog to digital convertor Interrupt.  |
| EU  | Enable or disable UART Interrupt.   |
| ET1 | Enable or disable Timer 1 Overflow Interrupt.   |
| EX1 | Enable or disable External Interrupt 1.   |
| ET0 | Enable or disable Timer 0 Overflow Interrupt.   |
| EX0 | Enable or disable External Interrupt 0.   |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

IEN1

SFR Address A9<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |   |     |     |      |     |      |     |
|---|---|-----|-----|------|-----|------|-----|
| - | - | EDV | EAV | EXX1 | EWT | EXX0 | EX6 |
|---|---|-----|-----|------|-----|------|-----|

|      |   |
|------|---|
| --   | Not implemented. Return ‘0’ when read.        |
| EDV  | Enable or disable Display V-Snc.              |
| EAV  | Enable or disable Acquisition V-Snc.          |
| EXX1 | Enable or disable extra external interrupt 1. |
| EWT  | Enable or disable Watchdog in timer mode.     |
| EXX0 | Enable or disable extra External Interrupt 0. |
| EX6  | Reserved.                                     |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**IEN2**

SFR Address AA<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |   |     |     |     |     |      |      |
|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| - | - | EDH | EAH | ECC | EPW | EX13 | EX12 |
|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| --          | Not implemented. Return '0' when read.      |
| <b>EDH</b>  | Enable or disable Display H-Snc.            |
| <b>EAH</b>  | Enable or disable Acquisition H-Snc.        |
| <b>ECC</b>  | Enable or disable channel change interrupt. |
| <b>EPW</b>  | Enable or disable PWM in timer mode.        |
| <b>EX13</b> | Reserved.                                   |
| <b>EX12</b> | Reserved.                                   |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**IEN3**

SFR Address AB<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |   |      |     |      |      |      |      |
|---|---|------|-----|------|------|------|------|
| - | - | EADW | E24 | EX21 | EX20 | EX19 | EX18 |
|---|---|------|-----|------|------|------|------|

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| --          | Not implemented. Return '0' when read.            |
| <b>EADW</b> | Enable or disable Analog to digital wake up unit. |
| <b>E24</b>  | Enable or disable line 24 interrupt.              |
| <b>EX21</b> | Reserved.   |
| <b>EX20</b> | Reserved.   |
| <b>EX19</b> | Reserved.   |
| <b>EX18</b> | Reserved.   |

## 7.5. Interrupt Source Registers

All the interrupts except for timer 0, timer1, external interrupt 0, external interrupt1, external extra interrupt 0 and external extra interrupt 1 are generated by the

respective blocks and are positive edge triggered. They are sampled in a central interrupt source register, corresponding bit must be cleared by the software after entering the interrupt service routine.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>

**CISR0 bit addressable**

SFR Address C0<sub>H</sub>

(MSB)

(LSB)

|     |     |      |     |     |       |     |     |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| L24 | ADC | WTmr | AVS | DVS | PWtmr | AHS | DHS |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|

### L24

1: Line 24 start interrupt occurred, source bit set by hardware,  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

### ADC

1: Analog to digital conversion complete source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

### WTmr

1: Watchdog in timer mode overflow source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

On reset this bit is initialized to 0, however if timer mode is selected and timer is running, every over flow of timer will set this bit. Therefore software must clear this bit before enabling the corresponding interrupt.

### AVS

1: Acquisition vertical sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

### DVS

1: Display Vertical sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

### PWtmr

1: PWM in timer mode overflow interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

On reset this bit is initialized to 0, however if timer mode is selected and timer is running, every over flow of timer will set this bit. Therefore software must clear this bit before enabling the corresponding interrupt.

### AHS

1: Acquisition horizontal sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.

### DHS

1: Display horizontal sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.  
0: Interrupt has not occurred.



Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

### CISR1 bit addressable

SFR Address C8<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |     |  |  |  |  |      |      |
|----|-----|--|--|--|--|------|------|
| CC | ADW |  |  |  |  | IEX1 | IEX0 |
|----|-----|--|--|--|--|------|------|

#### CC

1: Channel change interrupt source bit set by hardware.

Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.

0: Interrupt has not occurred.

#### ADW

1: ADC wake up interrupt source bit set by hardware.

Source bit must be reset by software after servicing the interrupt.

0: Interrupt has not occurred.

#### IEX1

External Extra Interrupt 1 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Must be cleared by software. Note that port P3.7 must be in input mode to use this interrupt.

#### IEX0

External Extra Interrupt 0 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Must be cleared by software. Note that port P3.1 must be in input mode to use this interrupt.

## 7.6. Interrupt Priority

For the purposes of assigning priority, the 24 possible interrupt sources are divided into groups determined by their bit position in the Interrupt Enable Registers and their respective requests are scanned in the order shown below.

Each interrupt group may individually be assigned to one of four priority levels by writing to the IP0 and IP1 Interrupt Priority registers at the corresponding bit position.

An interrupt service routine may only be interrupted by an interrupt of higher priority level and if two interrupts of different priority occur at the same time, the higher level interrupt will be serviced first. An interrupt cannot be interrupted by another interrupt of the same or a lower priority level.

If two interrupts of the same priority level occur simultaneously, the order in which the interrupts are serviced is determined by the scan order shown below.

**Table 7–1:**

| Interrupt Group | Interrupts in Group High Priority |                                    |                                     |                                     | Group Priority |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 0               | External Interrupt 0              | External Interrupt 6 <sup>1)</sup> | External Interrupt 12 <sup>1)</sup> | External Interrupt 18 <sup>1)</sup> | High Priority  |
| 1               | Timer 0                           | ExternalX Interrupt 0              | External Interrupt 13 <sup>1)</sup> | External Interrupt 19 <sup>1)</sup> |                |
| 2               | External Interrupt 1              | WT Timer                           | PW Timer                            | External Interrupt 20 <sup>1)</sup> |                |
| 3               | Timer 1                           | ExternalX Interrupt 1              | Channel Change                      | External Interrupt 21 <sup>1)</sup> |                |
| 4               | UART                              | Acquisition V-Sync                 | Acquisition H-Sync                  | Line 24 Start                       |                |
| 5               | A to D                            | Display V-Sync                     | Display H-Sync                      | A to D Wake up                      |                |

1) Not implemented

### 7.6.1. Interrupt Priority Registers (IP0 IP1)

The Interrupt Priority registers are structured as follows.

| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |    | IP0 bit addressable |      |      |      | SFR Address B8 <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |      |
|---|----|---------------------|------|------|------|--------------------------------------|------|
| --  | -- | G5P0                | G4P0 | G3P0 | G2P0 | G1P0                                 | G0P0 |

| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |   | IP1  |      |      |      | SFR Address AC <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |      |
|---|---|------|------|------|------|--------------------------------------|------|
| -   | - | G5P1 | G4P1 | G3P1 | G2P1 | G1P1                                 | G0P1 |

**IP1.7-IP1.6,** Not implemented. Return '0' when read.

**IP0.7-IP0.6**

**GxP1, GxP0**

**(x = 0 to 5)**

Interrupt Group Priority Level as follows:

0 0: Interrupt Group x is set to priority level 0 (lowest).

0 1: Interrupt Group x is set to priority level 1.

1 0: Interrupt Group x is set to priority level 2.

1 1: Interrupt Group x is set to priority level 3 (highest).

## 7.7. Interrupt Vectors

When an interrupt is serviced, a long call instruction is executed to one of the locations listed in Table 7–2.

Table 7–2:

| Interrupt Sources      | Interrupt Enable |      | Vector Address (hex) | Interrupt Request Flag    |
|------------------------|------------------|------|----------------------|---------------------------|
|                        | Register         | Bit  |                      |                           |
| External Interrupt 0   | IEN0             | EX0  | 0003                 | IE0 (TCON.1)              |
| Timer 0 Overflow       | IEN0             | ET0  | 000B                 | TF0 (TCON.5)              |
| External Interrupt 1   | IEN0             | EX1  | 0013                 | IE1 (TCON.3)              |
| Timer 1 Overflow       | IEN0             | ET1  | 001B                 | TF1 (TCON.7)              |
| UART                   | IEN0             | EU   | 0023                 | R1(SCON.0) and T1(SCON.1) |
| A to D                 | IEN0             | EAD  | 002B                 | ADC(CISR0.6)              |
| External Interrupt 6   | IEN1             | EX6  | 0033                 | Reserved                  |
| ExternalX Interrupt 0  | IEN1             | EXX0 | 003B                 | CISR1(IEX0)               |
| Watchdog in timer      | IEN1             | EWT  | 0043                 | WTmr(CISR0.5)             |
| External X Interrupt 1 | IEN1             | EXX1 | 004B                 | CISR1(IEX1)               |
| Acquisition V-Sync     | IEN1             | EAV  | 0053                 | AVS(CISR0.4)              |
| Display V-Sync         | IEN1             | EDV  | 005B                 | DVS(CISR0.3)              |
| External Interrupt 12  | IEN2             | EX12 | 0063                 | Reserved                  |
| External Interrupt 13  | IEN2             | EX13 | 006B                 | Reserved                  |
| PWM in timer mode      | IEN2             | EPW  | 0083                 | PWtmr(CISR0.2)            |
| Channel Change         | IEN2             | ECC  | 008B                 | CC(CISR1.7)               |
| Acquisition H-Sync     | IEN2             | EAH  | 0093                 | AHS(CISR0.1)              |
| Display H-Sync         | IEN2             | EDH  | 009B                 | DHS(CISR0.0)              |
| External Interrupt 18  | IEN3             | EX18 | 00A3                 | Reserved                  |
| External Interrupt 19  | IEN3             | EX19 | 00AB                 | Reserved                  |
| External Interrupt 20  | IEN3             | EX20 | 00B3                 | Reserved                  |
| External Interrupt 21  | IEN3             | EX21 | 00BB                 | Reserved                  |
| Line 24 Start          | IEN3             | E24  | 00C3                 | L24(CISR0.7)              |
| A to D Wake up         | IEN3             | EADW | 00CB                 | ADW(CISR1.6)              |

## 7.8. Interrupt and Memory Extension

When an interrupt occurs, the Memory Management Unit (MMU) carries out the following sequence of actions:

1. The MEX1 register bits are made available on SDATA0 [7:0].
2. The MEXSP register bits are made available on SADD[7:0].
3. The Stack read and write signals are set for a write operation.
4. A write is performed to External memory.
5. The MEXSP Stack Pointer is incremented.
6. The Interrupt Bank bits IB19 - IB16 (MEX2.3 - MEX2.0) are copied to both the NB19 - NB16 and the CB19 - CB16 bits in the MEX1.

Then on return from the interrupt service routine:

1. The MEXSP Stack Pointer is decremented.
2. The MEXSP register bits are made available on SADD [7:0].
3. The Stack read and write signals are set for a read operation.
4. A read is performed on External memory.
5. SDATA1 [7:0] is copied to the MEX1 register.

This action allows the user to place interrupt service routines on specific banks.

## 7.9. Interrupt Handling

External interrupt 0, external interrupt 1, timer 0, timer 1 and UART interrupt are handled as following.

Interrupts are sampled at S5P2 in each machine cycle and the sampled interrupts polled during the following machine cycle. If an interrupt is set when it is sampled, it will be serviced provided:

- An interrupt of an equal or higher priority is not currently being serviced
- The polling cycle is not the final cycle of a multi-cycle instruction, and
- The current instruction is neither a RETI nor a write either to one of Interrupt Enable registers or to one of the Interrupt Priority registers.

**Note: Active interrupts are only stored for one machine cycle. As a result, if an interrupt was active for one or more polling cycles but not serviced for one of the reasons given above, the interrupt will not be serviced.**

For all other interrupts interrupt request is stored as an interrupt flag in CISR0 and CISR1. These request bits must be cleared by software while servicing the interrupt. These interrupts always gets serviced once raised regardless of number of polling cycles required to service them.

The rest of the functionality with regards to sampling from controller and requirements to start the service are same as discussed above.

## 7.10. Interrupt Latency

The response time in a single interrupt system is between 3 and 9 machine cycles.

## 7.11. Interrupt Flag Clear

In case of external interrupt 0 and external interrupt 1, If the external interrupts are edge triggered, the interrupt flag is cleared on vectoring to the service routine but if they are level triggered, the flag is controlled by the external signal. Timer/counter flags are cleared on vectoring to the interrupt service routine. All other interrupt flag, including external extra interrupt 0 and 1 are not cleared by hardware. They must be cleared by software.

## 7.12. Interrupt Return

For the proper operation of the interrupt controller. It is necessary that all interrupt routines end with a RETI instruction.

## 7.13. Interrupt Nesting

The process whereby a higher-level interrupt request interrupts a lower-level interrupt service program is called nesting. In this case the address of the next instruction in the lower-priority service program is pushed onto the stack, the stack pointer is incremented by two and processor control is transferred to the program memory location of the first instruction of the higher-level service program. The last instruction of the higher-priority interrupt service program must be a RETI-instruction. This instruction clears the higher 'priority-level-active' flip-flop. RETI also returns processor control to the next instruction of the lower-level interrupt service program. Since the lower 'priority-level-active' flip-flop has remained set, higher priority interrupts are re-enabled while further lower-priority interrupts remain disabled.

## 7.14.External Interrupts

The external interrupt request inputs ( $\overline{\text{NINT0}}$  and  $\overline{\text{NINT1}}$ ) can be programmed for either transition- activated or level-activated operation. Control of the external interrupts is provided in the TCON register.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

### TCON

SFR Address 88<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| TF1 | TR1 | TF0 | TR0 | IE1 | IT1 | IE0 | IT0 |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

**IE1** Interrupt 1 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Cleared when interrupt processed.

**IT1** Interrupt 1 type control bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupts. IT1 = 1 selects transition-activated external interrupts.

**IE0** Interrupt 0 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Cleared when interrupt processed.

**IT0** Interrupt 0 type control bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupts. IT0 = 1 selects transition-activated external interrupts.

**TCON.7-4** See Section 12.

## 7.15.Extension of Standard 8051 Interrupt Logic

For more flexibility, the SDA 545x family provides a new feature in detection EX0 and EX1 in edge-triggered mode. Now there is the possibility to trigger an interrupt on the falling and / or rising edge at the dedicated Port 3 Pin. In order to use this feature respective IT0 and IT1 bits in the TCON register must be set to activate edge triggering mode. Table 7–3 shows combination for Interrupt 0, however description is true for interrupt 1 also.

**Table 7–3:**

| IT0 | EX0R | EX0F | Interrupt                            |
|-----|------|------|--------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0    | 0    | Disabled                             |
| 0   | 0    | 1    | Low level                            |
| 0   | 1    | 0    | High level                           |
| 0   | 1    | 1    | Disabled                             |
| 1   | 0    | 0    | Disabled                             |
| 1   | 0    | 1    | Negative edge triggered              |
| 1   | 1    | 0    | Positive edge triggered              |
| 1   | 1    | 1    | Positive and negative edge triggered |

Default after reset: 05<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**IRCON**

SFR Address AD<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |      |      |      |      |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|------|------|
| EXX1R | EXX1F | EXX0R | EXX0F | EX1R | EX1F | EX0R | EX0F |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|------|------|

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| <b>EXX1R</b> | if set, ExternalX 1-interrupt detection on rising edge at Pin P3.7  |
| <b>EXX1F</b> | if set, ExternalX 1-interrupt detection on falling edge at Pin P3.7 |
| <b>EXX0R</b> | if set, ExternalX 0-interrupt detection on rising edge at Pin P3.1  |
| <b>EXX0F</b> | if set, ExternalX 0-interrupt detection on falling edge at Pin P3.1 |
| <b>EX1R</b>  | if set, External 1-interrupt detection on rising edge at Pin P3.3   |
| <b>EX1F</b>  | if set, External 1-interrupt detection on falling edge at Pin P3.3  |
| <b>EX0R</b>  | if set, External 0-interrupt detection on rising edge at Pin P3.2   |
| <b>EX0F</b>  | if set, External 0-interrupt detection on falling edge at Pin P3.2  |

Development Note: In order to implement the edge triggering functionality, IT0 and IT1 are mirrored outside the core.

**Note: If both EXxR and EXxF are set both rising and falling edges would generate interrupt. Minimum delay between the interrupts should be ensured by the software. If both the EXxR and EXxF are reset to 0, interrupt is disabled.**

**Note: External extra interrupts EX1 and EX2 are edge triggered interrupts only.**

**Note: When int0 or int1 is used together with capture reload timer, it is possible to generate interrupt through CRT. For further details refer to Section 13..**

Please refer to Section 3.1. register bits Intsrc0 and Intsrc1 for further description of external interrupt (0 and 1) source selection.

**7.16.Interrupt Task Function**

The processor records the active priority level(s) by setting internal flip-flop(s). Each interrupt level has its own flip-flop. The flip-flop corresponding to the interrupt level being serviced is reset when the processor executes a RETI-instruction.

The sequence of events for an interrupt is:

- A source provokes an interrupt by setting its associated interrupt request bit to let the processor know an interrupt condition has occurred.
- The interrupt request is conditioned by bits in the interrupt enable and interrupt priority registers.
- The processor acknowledges the interrupt by setting one of the four internal ‘priority-level active’ flip-flops and performing a hardware subroutine call. This call pushes the PC (but not the PSW) onto the stack and, for some sources, clears the interrupt request flag.
- The service program is executed.
- Control is returned to the main program when the RETI-instruction is executed. The RETI- instruction also clears one of the internal ‘priority-level active’ flip-flops.

The interrupt request flags IE0, IE1, TF0 and TF1 are cleared when the processor transfers control to the first instruction of the interrupt service program.

8. Power Saving Modes

The controller provides four modes in which power consumption can be significantly reduced.

- Idle mode: The CPU is gated off from the oscillator. All peripherals except WDT (in watch dog mode) are still provided with the clock and are able to work.
- Power-down mode: Operation of the controller is turned off. This mode is used to save the contents of internal RAM with a very low standby current.

- Power-save mode: In this mode display generator, Slicer\_acq\_sync, VADC, CADC, ADC\_wakeup, PWM, CRT, WDT, DAC, PLL, and Display (display, pixel clock and D sync) can be turned off.
- Slow-down mode: In this mode the system frequency is reduced by one fourth.

All modes are entered by software. Special function register is used to enter one of these modes.

8.1. Power-Save Mode Registers

| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |    |    | PSAVE bit addressable |       |         |      | SFR-Address D8 <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |
|---|----|----|-----------------------|-------|---------|------|--------------------------------------|
| --  | -- | -- | CADC                  | WAKUP | SLI_ACQ | DISP | PERI                                 |

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| --      | Not used.  |
| CADC    | Controller ADC<br>0: Power-save mode not started.<br>1: Power-save mode started.<br>In power-save mode all 4 controller ADC channels are disabled.   |
| WAKUP   | Wake up of CADC<br>0: Power-save mode not started.<br>1: Power-save mode started.<br>In power-save mode ADC wake up unit of CADC is disabled.<br>Note that power-save mode of wake up unit is only useful in saving power when CADC bit is set.  |
| SLI_ACQ | Slicer and Acquisition<br>0: Power-save mode not started.<br>1: Power-save mode started.<br>In power-save mode Video A to D, Slicer, sync unit and acquisition are disabled. All the pending bus requests are masked off.  |
| DISP    | Display Unit<br>0: Power-save mode not started.<br>1: Power-save mode started.<br>In power-save mode display generator, pixel clock unit, display sync unit, sandcastle decoder and COR_BLA are disabled. All the pending bus request are masked off.<br>DAC is also switched off and it outputs the values defined for DAC off. COR_BLA output their reset value. |



**PERI**

Peripherals (Watchdog timer in timer mode, PWM and CRT)

0: Power-save mode not started.

1: Power-save mode started.

In power-save mode WDT (in timer mode), PWM and CRT are disabled. It is only possible to enter this power save mode if watchdog is not started in a watchdog mode.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PSAVEX bit addressable**

SFR-Address D7<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |    |    |    |    |         |         |      |
|----|----|----|----|----|---------|---------|------|
| -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | Clk_src | PLL_res | PLLS |
|----|----|----|----|----|---------|---------|------|

--

Not used.

**CLK\_src**

CLock Source

0: 200 MHz PLL (33.33 MHz system clock) selected.

1: PLL is bypassed oscillator clock 6 MHz (3 MHz system clock selected).

In this mode slicer, acquisition, DAC and display generator are disabled.

**PLL\_res**

PLL Reset

0: PLL not reset.

1: PLL reset.

PLL reset sequence requires that PLL\_res = 1 for 10 µs then PLL\_res = 0, after that 150 µs are required till PLL is locked.

**PLLS**

PLL Sleep

0: Power-save mode not started.

1: Power-save mode started.

Before the PLL is switched to power-save mode (PLLS = 1), the SW has to switch the clock source from 200 MHz PLL clock to the 6 MHz oscillator clock (CLK\_src = 1).

To switch back to the normal mode, software has to end the PLL power save mode (PLLS = 0), reset the PLL for 10 µs (3 machine cycles), PLL\_res = 1 the back to 0, wait for 150 µs (38 machine cycles) and then switch back to the PLL clock.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## PCON

SFR-Address 87<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|      |     |      |    |     |     |     |      |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| SMOD | PDS | IDLS | SD | GF1 | GF0 | PDE | IDLE |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|

### SMOD

USRT Baud Rate

0: Normal baud rate.

1: Double baud rate.

### PDS

Power-Down Start Bit

0: Power Down Mode not started.

1: Power Down Mode started.

The instruction that sets this bit is the last instruction before entering power down mode. Additionally, this bit is protected by a delay cycle. Power down mode is entered, if and only if bit PDE was set by the previous instruction. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

### IDLS

Idle Start Bit

0: Idle Mode not started.

1: Idle Mode started.

The instruction that sets this bit is the last instruction before entering idle mode. Additionally, this bit is protected by a delay cycle. Idle mode is entered, if and only if bit IDLE was set by the previous instruction. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

### SD

Slow-Down Bit

0: Slow-down mode is disabled.

1: Slow-down mode is enabled.

This bit is set to indicate the external clock generating circuitry to slow down the frequency. This bit is not protected by a delay cycle.

### GFx

General purpose flag bits

For user.

### PDE

Power-Down Mode Enable Bit

When set, a delay cycle is started. The following instruction can then set the device into power down mode. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

### IDLE

Idle Mode Enable Bit

When set, a delay cycle is started. The following instruction can then set the device into idle mode. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## PCON

SFR-Address 87<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |     |      |    |   |   |     |      |
|----|-----|------|----|---|---|-----|------|
| -- | PDS | IDLS | SD | — | — | PDE | IDLE |
|----|-----|------|----|---|---|-----|------|

## 8.2. Idle Mode

Entering the idle mode is done by two consecutive instructions immediately following each other. The first instruction has to set bit IDLE (PCON.0) and must not set bit IDLS (PCON.5). The following instruction has to set bit IDLS (PCON.5) and must not set bit IDLE (PCON.0). Bits IDLE and IDLS will automatically be cleared after having been set. This double-instruction sequence is implemented to minimize the chance of unintentionally entering the idle mode. The following instruction sequence may serve as an example:

```
ORL    PCON,#00000001B    ;Set bit IDLE,
bit IDLS must not be set.
```

```
ORL    PCON,#00100000B    ;Set bit IDLS,
bit IDLE must not be set.
```

The instruction that sets bit IDLS is the last instruction executed before going into idle mode.

Concurrent setting of the enable and the start bits does **not** set the device into the respective power saving mode.

The idle mode can be terminated by activation of any enabled interrupt (or a hardware reset). The CPU-operation is resumed, the interrupt will be serviced and the next instruction to be executed after RETI-instruction will be the one following the instruction that set the bit IDLS. The port state and the contents of SFRs are held during idle mode.

Entering Idle mode disables, VADC, Acquisition, Slicer, Display, CADC and DAC. However note that CADC Wake up unit is still operational. Leaving idle mode brings them to their original power save configuration (See Section 8.4.).

## 8.3. Power-Down Mode

Entering the power-down mode is done by two consecutive instructions immediately following each other. The first instruction has to set bit PDE (PCON.1) and must not set bit PDS (PCON.6). The following instruction has to set bit PDS (PCON.6) and must not set bit PDE (PCON.1). Bits PDE and PDS will automatically be cleared after having been set.

This double-instruction sequence is implemented to minimize the chance of unintentionally entering the power-down mode. The following instruction sequence may serve as an example:

```
ORL    PCON,#00000010B    ;Set bit PDE, bit
PDS must not be set.
```

```
ORL    PCON,#01000000B    ;Set bit PDS, bit
PDE must not be set.
```

The instruction that sets bit PDS is the last instruction executed before going into power-down mode.

Concurrent setting of the enable and the start bits does **not** set the device into the respective power saving mode.

If idle mode and power-down mode are invoked simultaneously, the power-down mode takes precedence.

The only exit from power-down mode is a hardware reset. The reset will redefine all SFRs, but will not change the contents of internal RAM.

## 8.4. Power-Save Mode

Bits in the PSave register individually enable and disable different major blocks in the IC. Note that power-save mode is independent of Idle and power-down mode. In case of idle mode, blocks which are in power save mode remains in power-save mode.

Entering the power down mode with power-save mode is possible. However leaving the power down mode (reset) would initialize all the power save register bits.

Note that power-save mode has a higher priority than idle mode.

## 8.5. Slow-Down Mode

SD bit in PCON register when sets divides the system frequency by 4. During the normal operation TVT Pro is running with 33.33 MHz and in SD mode TVT Pro runs with 8.33 MHz. In slow-down mode the slicer, Acquisition and display are disabled regardless of power-save mode or other modes. All the pending request to the bus by these blocks are masked off. Leaving slow-down mode restores the original status of these blocks.

## 9. Reset

### 9.1. Reset Sources

TVText Pro can be reset by two sources.

1. Externally by pulling down the reset pin  $\overline{\text{RST}}$ .
2. Internally by Watch dog timer reset.

Note that both the reset signals use the same path however Watchdog reset does not reset the PLL.

### 9.2. Reset Filtering

RST pin uses a filter with delay element, which suppresses the jitter and spikes in the range of 25 ns to 75 ns.

### 9.3. Reset Duration

With the active edge of the  $\overline{\text{RST}}$  an internal signal resets all the flip flops asynchronously. The internal signal is released synchronously to the internal clock when it is stable as described below.

Duration of the external reset depends on the time required for crystal oscillator to stabilize and is dependent on the crystal used.

During the period when the RST pin is held low, the PLL is initialized and it gets locked. The high going reset pulse then initiates a sequence which requires one machine cycle (12 clock cycles) to initialize the processor and all other registers and peripherals.

### 9.4. Registers

Upon reset, all the registers are initialized to the values as defined in Section 3..

### 9.5. Functional Blocks

All the blocks to a known a known state. Processor, Acquisition and display will not have any pending bus requests after reset.

### 9.6. RAMs

Reset hardware does not initialize any RAMs.

### 9.7. Analog Blocks

After the power up/reset DAC will output a fix value. ADC and ADC wake up unit does not generate any interrupts till the 12 cycle reset sequence is completed.

## 9.8. Processor

After the reset sequence program counter initializes to 0000<sub>H</sub> and starts execution from this location in the ROM. Location 0000<sub>H</sub> to 0002<sub>H</sub> is reserved for initialization routine.

### 9.9. Ports

With the reset all the ports are set in to the input mode. Except Port 4.0, 4.1 and 4.4, which by default are reset to output address lines A17, A18, A19.

### 9.10. Initialization Phase

#### 9.10.1. Acquisition

After the reset Acquisition will not generate any memory accesses to the RAM, as Acq\_start bit is initialized to 0. Processor should then initialize the VBI buffer and set the ACQ\_start bit (software). Acquisition will also not generate any accesses to the RAM if the synchronization is not achieved.

#### 9.10.2. Display

After the reset DAC will output a fix value as defined by En\_DGOut, which is reset to 0. COR\_BLA is reset to a level indicating COR = 0 and BLank = 1.

Processor should initialize the display memory and set the En\_DGOut (OCD\_Ctrl) bit.

## 10. Memory Organization

The processor has separate Program and Data memory space. Memory spaces can be further classified as;

- Program Memory
- Internal Data Memory 256 Bytes (CPU RAM)
- Internal Extended Data Memory (XRAM)

A 16-bit program counter and a dedicated banking logic provide the processor with 1 MByte addressing capability (for ROM-less versions, up to 20 address lines are available).

The program counter allows the user to execute calls and branches to any location within the program memory space.

Data pointers allows to move data to and from Extended Data RAM.

There are no instructions that permit program execution to move from the program memory space to any of the data memory space.

### 10.1. Program Memory

Program ROM consists of 128 KByte on chip ROM.

Certain locations in program memory are reserved for specific programs. Locations '0000' through '0002' are reserved for the initialization program. Following reset, the CPU always begins execution at location '0000'. Locations '0003' through '00CB' are reserved for the interrupt-request service programs.

**Table 10–1:**

| Interrupt Source       | Vector Address |
|------------------------|----------------|
| External Interrupt 0   | 0003           |
| Timer 0 Overflow       | 000B           |
| External Interrupt 1   | 0013           |
| Timer 1 Overflow       | 001B           |
| UART                   | 0023           |
| ADC                    | 002B           |
| Reserved               | 0033           |
| ExternalX Interrupt 0  | 003B           |
| Watchdog timer         | 0043           |
| External X Interrupt 1 | 004B           |
| Acquisition V Sync     | 0053           |
| Display V sync         | 005B           |
| Reserved               | 0063           |
| Reserved               | 006B           |
| Reserved               | 0073           |
| Reserved               | 007B           |
| PWM in timer mode      | 0083           |
| Channel Change         | 008B           |
| Acq H Sync             | 0093           |
| Display H Sync         | 009B           |
| Reserved               | 00A3           |
| Reserved               | 00AB           |
| Reserved               | 00B3           |
| Reserved               | 00BB           |
| Line 24 start          | 00C3           |
| A to D wake up         | 00CB           |

## 10.2. Internal Data RAM

Internal Data RAM is split into CPU RAM and XRAM

### 10.2.1. CPU RAM

#### Address Space

The internal CPU RAM (IRAM) occupies address space 00<sub>H</sub> to FF<sub>H</sub>. This space is further split into two where lower 128 Bytes (00<sub>H</sub>-7F<sub>H</sub>) can be accessed using both direct and indirect register addressing method. Upper half 128 Bytes (80<sub>H</sub>-FF<sub>H</sub>) can be accessed using register indirect method only. Register direct method for this address space (80<sub>H</sub>-FF<sub>H</sub>) is reserved for Special function register access.

#### Registers

Controller registers are also located in IRAM. Four banks of eight registers each occupy locations 0 through 31. Only one of these banks may be enabled at a time through a two-bit field in the PSW.

#### Bit addressable RAM Area

128-bit locations of the on-chip RAM are accessible through direct addressing. These bits reside in internal data RAM at byte locations 32 through 47.

#### Stack

The stack can be located anywhere in the internal data RAM address space. The stack depth is limited only by the available internal data RAM, thanks to an 8-bit relocatable stack pointer. The stack is used for storing the program counter during subroutine calls and may also be used for passing parameters. Any byte of internal data RAM or special function registers accessible through direct addressing can be pushed/popped. By default Stack Pointer always has a reset value of 07<sub>H</sub>.

### 10.2.2. Extended Data RAM (XRAM)

An additional on-chip RAM space called 'XRAM' extends the internal RAM capacity. Up to 16 Kilobytes of XRAM are accessed by MOVX @DPTR. XRAM is located in the upper area of the 64K address space.

1 Kbyte of the XRAM, called VBI Buffer, is reserved for storing teletext data. 1 KByte of address space can be allocated for CPU work space. Three Kilobyte of RAM is reserved as Display RAM. Rest of the RAM can be configured between Teletext page memory and DRCS (Dynamically Redefinable Character Set) memory.

## Extended Data Memory Address Mapping

XRAM is mapped in the address space of C000<sub>H</sub> to FFFF<sub>H</sub>. 16 KBytes are implemented on Chip the address space of the 16K block is decoded starting from C000<sub>H</sub>. Note that this decoding is done independent of the memory banking. That means that in all 16 banks of 64K, upper 16K address space is reserved for internal Extended data memory. This decoding method has an advantage, while copying data back and forth from on-chip RAM and off-chip RAM, there is no need to switch the memory banks.

### 10.3. Memory Extension

The controller provides four additional address lines A16, A17, A18 and A19. These additional address lines are used to access program and data memory space up to 1MByte. The extended memory space is split into 16 banks of 64 Kbyte each.

A16 is available as a dedicated pin, however A17, A18 and A19 work as alternate function to port pins P4.0, P4.1 and P4.4 respectively. Refer to register CSCR1 (A19\_P4\_4, A18\_P4\_1, A17\_P4\_0).

The operations to the extended memory space are controlled by four special function registers called MEX1, MEX2, MEX3 and MEXSP.

The functionality for memory extension is provided by a module Memory management unit (MMU) which includes the four SFR registers MEX1, MEX2, MEX3 and MEXSP.

#### 10.3.1. Memory Extension Registers

The following registers are present in the Memory management unit.

These registers can be read and written through MOV instructions like any other SFR registers. Except for CB bits in MEX1 which are read only they can only be written by MMU. During normal operation user must not write in the MEXSP.

**10.3.1.1. Memory Extension Register 1**

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**MEX1**

SFR Address 94<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| CB19 | CB18 | CB17 | CB16 | NB19 | NB18 | NB17 | NB16 |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**NB** Next Bank; R/W

**CB** Current Bank; Read Only

**Comments** None

**10.3.1.2. Memory Extension Register 2**

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**MEX2**

SFR Address 95<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| MM | MB18 | MB17 | MB16 | IB19 | IB18 | IB17 | IB16 |
|----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**IB** Interrupt Bank; R/W

**MB** Memory Bank; R/W

**MM** Memory Mode; R/W; 1 = use MB

**Comments** None

**10.3.1.3. Memory Extension Register 3**

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**MEX3**

SFR Address 96<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|      |     |     |      |     |      |      |      |
|------|-----|-----|------|-----|------|------|------|
| MB19 | UB3 | UB4 | MX19 | MXM | MX18 | MX17 | MX16 |
|------|-----|-----|------|-----|------|------|------|

**MB19** Memory Bank bit; R/Wbit. See MEX2.

**MXM** = 1 During external Data Memory accesses, the bits MX19 ... 16 are used as address lines A19 ... 16 instead of the current bank (CB).

**MX19 ... 16** MOVX-Bank; R/W. If MXM is set, these bits will be used during external data moves into or from an externally connected Data RAM.

**UB3, UB4** User bits; available to the user, for MMU they are don't care.

10.3.1.4. Memory Extension Stack Pointer

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

MEXSP

SFR Address 97<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| -- | SP6 | SP5 | SP4 | SP3 | SP2 | SP1 | SP0 |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

SP

Stack Pointer: Maximum allowable value 7F<sub>H</sub>.

Bit7

Reserved bit for future.

Comments

None.

10.3.2. Reset Value

In order to insure proper 8051 functionality all the bits in SFR MEX1, MEX2, MEX3 and MEXSP are initialized to 0.

10.3.3. Instructions on which Memory Extension would act

- LJMP
- MOVC
- MOVX
- LCALL
- ACALL
- RET
- RETI

10.3.4. Program Memory Banking (LJMP)

After reset the bits for current bank (CB) and next bank (NB) are set to zero. This insures that processor starts the same as standard 8051 controller at address 00000<sub>H</sub>.

When a jump to another bank is required, software changes the bits NB16 ... 19 to the appropriate bank address (before LJMP instruction).

When LJMP is encountered in the code, MMU copies the NB16 ... 19 (next bank) bits to CB16 ... 19 (current bank). Note that the NB bits are not destroyed.

Extended address bits would appear at A16 ... A19. This address line has same timing requirement as normal address lines A0...A15 and both must be stable at the same time.

Only with LJMP above mentioned action is performed, other jmp instructions have no effect.

CB bits are read only.



### 10.3.5. MOVC Handling

There are two modes for MOVC instructions. The mode is selected by MM bit in MEX2.

#### MOVC with Current Bank

When MM bit = '0', MOVC will access the current bank. The CB16 ... CB19 bits would appear as address A16 ... A19 during MOVC instructions.

#### MOVC with Memory Bank

When MM bit = '1', MOVC will access the Memory bank. The MB16 ... MB19 bits would appear as address A16 ... A19 during MOVC instructions.

Note: MEX1 is not destroyed.

### MOVX Handling

There are two modes for MOVX instructions. The mode is selected by MXM bit in MEX3.

#### MOVX with Current Bank

When MXM bit = '0', MOVX will access the current bank. The CB16 ... CB19 bits would appear as address A16 ... A19 during MOVX instructions.

#### MOVX with Data Memory Bank

When MXM bit = '1', MOVX will access the Data memory bank. The MX16 ... MX19 bits would appear as address A16 ... A19 during MOVX instructions.

Note: MEX1 is not destroyed.

### 10.3.6. CALLs and Interrupts

#### Memory Extension Stack

For Interrupts and Calls Memory extension Stack is required. Stack pointer MEXSP provides the stack depth of up to 128 bytes. Stack width is 1 byte. In TVTPro 128 Bytes stack is implemented.

### 10.3.7. Stack Full

No indication for stack full is provided. User is responsible to read MEXSP SFR to determine the status of the MEXSP stack.

### 10.3.8. Timing

MMU outputs address bits A19 ... A16 at the same time as normal addresses A15 ... A0.

Stack operation signals, SAdd[6:0], SDataI[7:0], SDataO[7:0], SRd and SWr have the same timing as internal RAM signals.

### 10.3.9. Interfacing Extended Memory

Signals A19, A18, A17, A16 are used to decode extended memory.

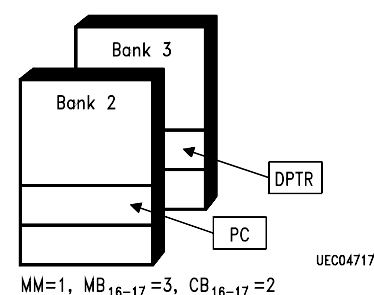
### 10.3.10. Interfacing Extended Stack

Device provides 128 Byte extended Stack.

SAdd[6:0], SDataI[7:0], SDataO[7:0], SRd and SWr are available at the core boundary which are used to interface a 64 Byte SRAM.

### 10.3.11. Application Examples

#### MOVC



**Fig. 10–1: PC and DPTR on Different Banks**

Sample Code

Fig. 10–2 shows an assembler program run, performing the following actions:

- 1. Start at bank 0 at 00000.
- 2. Set ISR-page to bank 2.
- 3. Jump to bank 1 at address 25.
- 4. Being interrupted to bank 2 ISR.
- 5. Call a subprogram at bank 2 address 43.
- 6. After return read data from bank 2.

10.3.12. ROM and ROMless Version

XROM pin determines the on-chip or off-chip ROM access.

If no internal ROM is to be used, then the XROM pin (in ROMless version) should be driven low. Controller then accesses the External ROM only. In ROM version this pin is internally pulled high, indicating no external ROM.

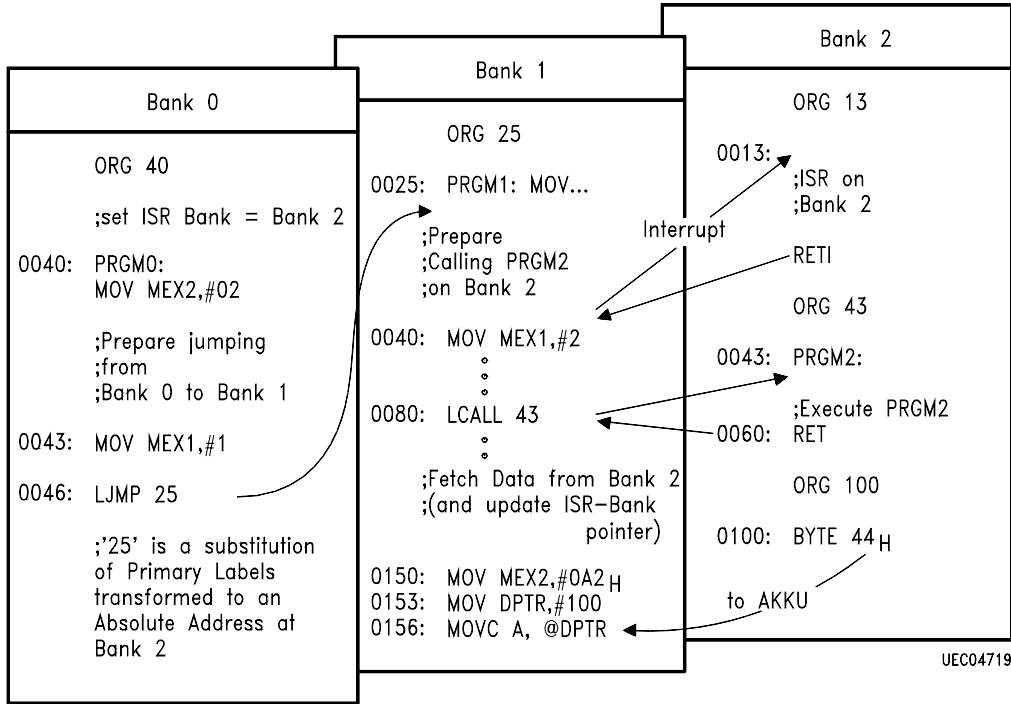


Fig. 10–2: Program Code

## 11. UART

The serial port is full duplex, meaning it can transmit and receive simultaneously. It is also receive-buffered, meaning it can commence reception of a second byte before a previously received byte has been read from the receive register (however, if the first byte still hasn't been read by the time reception of the second byte is complete, one of the bytes will be lost). The serial port receive and transmit registers are both accessed at special function register SBUF. Writing to SBUF loads the transmit register, and reading SBUF accesses a physically separate receive register.

The frequencies and baud rates depend on the internal system clock, used by the serial interface.

The serial port can operate in 4 modes:

### 11.1. Modes

#### 11.1.1. Mode 0

Serial data enters and exits through RxD (P3.7). TxD (P3.1) outputs the shift clock.

#### 11.1.2. Mode 1

10 bits are transmitted (through TxD) or received (through RxD): a start bit (0), 8 data bits (LSB first), and a stop bit (1). On reception, the stop bit goes into RB8 in special function register SCON. The baud rate is variable.

#### 11.1.3. Mode 2

11 bits are transmitted (through TxD) or received (through RxD): a start bit (0), 8 data bits (LSB first), a programmable 9<sup>th</sup> data bit, and a stop bit (1). On transmission, the 9<sup>th</sup> data bit (TB8 in SCON) can be assigned the value of 0 or 1. Or, for example, the parity bit (P, in the PSW) could be moved into TB8. On reception, the 9<sup>th</sup> data bit goes into RB8 in the special function register SCON, while the stop bit is ignored. The baud rate is programmable via SFR-Bit SMOD.

#### 11.1.4. Mode 3

11 bits are transmitted (through TxD) or received (through RxD): a start bit (0), 8 data bits (LSB first), a programmable 9<sup>th</sup> data bit and a stop bit (1). In fact, mode 3 is the same as mode 2 in all respects except the baud rate. The baud rate in mode 3 is variable.

**Table 11–1:**

| SM0 | SM1 | Mode | Description | Baud Rate (CDC = 0)                             |
|-----|-----|------|-------------|---|
| 0   | 0   | 0    | Shift Reg.  | $f_{\text{system}}/12$                          |
| 0   | 1   | 1    | 8-bit UART  | Variable  |
| 1   | 0   | 2    | 9-bit UART  | $f_{\text{system}}/64$ , $f_{\text{system}}/32$ |
| 1   | 1   | 3    | 9-bit UART  | Variable  |

In all four modes, transmission is initiated by any instruction that uses SBUF as a destination register. Reception is initiated in mode 0 by the condition RI = 0 and REN = 1. Reception is initiated in the other modes by the incoming start bit if REN = 1.

|                                      |     |     |     |             |     |                             |    |
|--------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------------|-----|-----------------------------|----|
| Serial Port Control Register         |     |     |     | <b>SCON</b> |     | SFR-Address 98 <sub>H</sub> |    |
| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub> |     |     |     |             |     |                             |    |
| (MSB)                                |     |     |     | (LSB)       |     |                             |    |
| SM0                                  | SM1 | SM2 | REN | TB8         | RB8 | TI                          | RI |

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| SM0 | Serial Port Mode Selection, see Table 11–1.  |
| SM1 | Serial Port Mode Selection, see Table 11–1.  |
| SM2 | Enables the multiprocessor communication feature in modes 2 and 3. In mode 2 or 3, if SM2 is set to 1 then RI will not be activated if the received 9th data bit (RB8) is 0. In mode 1, if SM2 = 1 then RI will not be activated if a valid stop bit was not received. In mode 0, SM2 should be 0. |
| REN | Enables serial reception. Set by software to enable reception. Cleared by software to disable reception.   |
| TB8 | Is the 9th data bit that will be transmitted in modes 2 and 3. Set or cleared by software as desired.  |
| RB8 | In modes 2 and 3, is the 9th data bit that was received. In mode 1, if SM2 = 0, RB8 is the stop bit that was received. In mode 0, RB8 is not used.   |
| TI  | Is the transmit interrupt flag. Set by hardware at the end of the 8th bit time in mode 0, or at the beginning of the stop bit in the other modes, in any serial transmission. Must be cleared by software.   |
| RI  | Is the receive interrupt flag. Set by hardware at the end of the 8th bit time in mode 0, or halfway through stop bit time in the other modes, in any serial reception. Must be cleared by software.  |

11.2. Multiprocessor Communication

Modes 2 and 3 of the serial interface of the controller have a special provision for multiprocessor communication. In these modes, 9 data bits are received. The 9th one goes into RB8. Then comes a stop bit. The port can be programmed such that when the stop bit is received, the serial port interrupt will be activated only if RB8 = 1. This feature is enabled by setting bit SM2 in SCON. A way to use this feature in multiprocessor communications is as follows.

When the master processor wants to transmit a block of data to one of the several slaves, it first sends out an address byte which identifies the target slave. An address byte differs from a data byte in that the 9th bit is 1 in an address byte and 0 in a data byte. With SM2 = 1, no slave will be interrupted by a data byte. An address byte however, will interrupt all slaves, so that each slave can examine the received byte and see if it is being addressed. The addressed slave will clear its SM2 bit and prepare to receive the data bytes that will be coming. The slaves that weren't addressed

leave their SM2s set and go on about their business, ignoring the coming data bytes.

SM2 has no effect in mode 0, and in mode 1 can be used to check the validity of the stop bit. In a mode 1 reception, if SM2 = 1, the receive interrupt will not be activated unless a valid stop bit is received.

## 12. General Purpose Timers/Counters

Two independent general purpose 16-bit timers/counters are integrated for use in measuring time intervals, measuring pulse widths, counting events, and causing periodic (repetitive) interrupts. Either can be configured to operate as timer or event counter.

In the 'timer' function, the registers TLx and/or THx (x = 0, 1) are incremented once every machine cycle. Thus, one can think of it as counting machine cycles.

A machine cycle consists of 12 oscillator periods.

In the 'counter' function, the registers TLx and/or THx (x = 0, 1) are incremented in response to a 1-to-0 transition at its corresponding external input pin, T0 or T1. In this function, the external input is sampled during every machine cycle. When the samples show a high in one cycle and a low in the next cycle, the count is incremented. The new count value appears in the register during the cycle following the one in which the transition was detected. Since it takes 2 machine cycles (24 oscillator periods) to recognize a 1-to-0 transition, the maximum count rate is 1/24 of the oscillator frequency. There are no restrictions on the duty cycle of the external input signal, but to ensure that a given level is sampled at least once before it changes, it should be held for at least one full machine cycle.

### 12.1. Timer/Counter 0: Mode Selection

Timer/counter 0 can be configured in one of four operating modes, which are selected by bit-pairs (M1, M0) in TMOD-register (see Section 12.1.3.).

#### Mode 0

Putting timer/counter 0 into mode 0 makes it look like an 8048 timer, which is an 8-bit counter with a divide-by-32 prescaler. Table 12–1 shows the mode 0 operation as it applies to timer 0.

In this mode, the timer register is configured as a 13-bit register. As the count rolls over from all 1 s to all 0 s, it sets the timer interrupt flag TF0. The counted input is enabled to the timer when TR0 = 1 and either GATE = 0 or INT0 = 1. (Setting GATE = 1 allows the timer to be controlled by external input INT0, to facilitate pulse width measurements.) TR0 is a control bit in the special function register TCON (see Section 12.1.4.). GATE is contained in register TMOD (see Section 12.1.3.).

The 13-bit register consists of all 8 bits of TH0 and the lower 5 bits of TL0. The upper 3 bits of TL0 are indeterminate and should be ignored. Setting the run flag (TR0) does not clear the registers.

#### Mode 1

Mode 1 is the same as mode 0, except that the timer/counter 0 register is being run with all 16 bits.

#### Mode 2

Mode 2 configures the timer/counter 0 register as an 8-bit counter (TL0) with automatic reload. Overflow from TL0 not only sets TF0, but also reloads TL0 with the contents of TH0, which is preset by software. The reload leaves TH0 unchanged.

#### Mode 3

Timer/counter 0 in mode 3 establishes TL0 and TH0 as two separate counters. TL0 uses the timer 0 control bits: C/T, GATE, TR0, INT0 and TF0. TH0 is locked into a timer function (counting machine cycles) and takes over the use of TR1 and TF1 from timer 1. Thus, TH0 now controls the 'timer 1' interrupt.

Mode 3 is provided for applications requiring an extra 8-bit timer or counter. With timer 0 in mode 3, the processor can operate as if it has three timers/counters. When timer 0 is in mode 3, timer 1 can be turned on and off by switching it out of and into its own mode 3, or can still be used in any application not requiring an interrupt.

### 12.1.1. Timer/Counter 1: Mode Selection

Timer/counter 1 can also be configured in one of four modes, which are selected by its own bitpairs (M1, M0) in TMOD-register.

The serial port receives a pulse each time that timer/counter 1 overflows. This pulse rate is divided to generate the transmission rate of the serial port.

Modes 0 and 1 are the same as for counter 0.

#### Mode 2

The 'reload' mode is reserved to determine the frequency of the serial clock signal (not implemented).

#### Mode 3

When counter 1's mode is reprogrammed to mode 3 (from mode 0, 1 or 2), it disables the increment counter. This mode is provided as an alternative to using the TR1 bit (in TCON-register) to start and stop timer/counter 1.

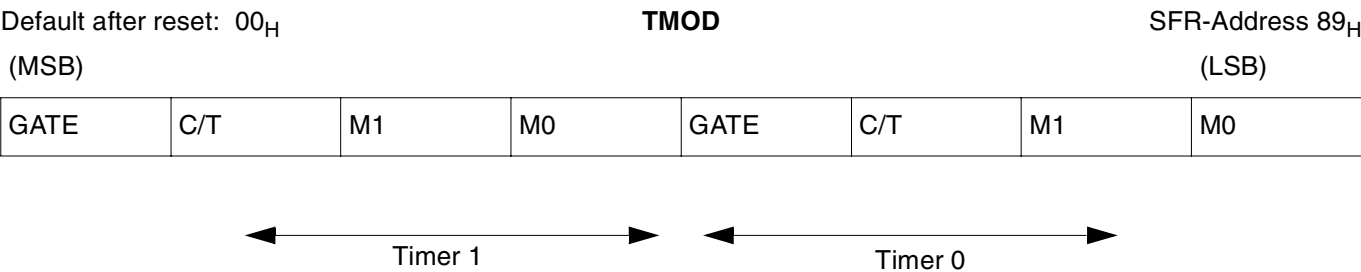
12.1.2. Configuring the Timer/Counter Input

The use of the timer/counter is determined by two 8-bit registers, TMOD (timer mode) and TCON (timer control). The input to the counter circuitry is from an external reference (for use as a counter), or from the on-chip oscillator (for use as a timer), depending on whether TMOD's C/T-bit is set or cleared, respectively. When used as a time base, the on-chip oscillator frequency is divided by twelve or six before being used as the counter input. When TMOD's GATE bit is set (1), the external reference input (T1, T0) or the oscillator input is gated to the counter conditional upon a second external input (INT0), (INT1) being high. When the GATE bit is zero (0), the external reference, or oscilla-

tor input, is unconditionally enabled. In either case, the normal interrupt function of INT0 and INT1 is not affected by the counter's operation. If enabled, an interrupt will occur when the input at INT0 or INT1 is low. The counters are enabled for incrementing when TCON's TR1 and TR0 bits are set. When the counters overflow, the TF1 and TF0 bits in TCON get set, and interrupt requests are generated.

The counter circuitry counts up to all 1's and then overflows to either 0's or the reload value. Upon overflow, TF1 or TF0 is set. When an instruction changes the timer's mode or alters its control bits, the actual change occurs at the end of the instruction's execution.

12.1.3. Timer/Counter Mode Register



- GATE**

Gating control when set. Timer/counter 'x' is enabled only while 'INTx' pin is high and 'TRx' control pin is set. When cleared, timer 'x' is enabled, whenever 'TRx' control bit is set.
- C/T**

Timer or counter selector. Cleared for timer operation (input from internal system clock). Set for Counter operation (input from 'Tx' input pin).

Table 12–1:

| M1 | M0 | Operating Mode   |
|----|----|--|
| 0  | 0  | 8048 timer: 'TLx' serves as five-bit prescaler.<br>16-bit timer/counter: 'THx' and 'TLx' are cascaded, there is no prescaler.<br>8-bit auto-reload timer/counter: 'THx' holds a value which is to be reloaded into 'TLx' each time it overflows. |
| 0  | 1  |  |
| 1  | 0  |  |
| 1  | 1  | (Timer 0) TL0 is an eight-bit timer/counter controlled by the standard timer 0 control bits; TH0 is an eight-bit timer only controlled by timer 1 control bits.<br>(Timer 1) Timer/counter 1 is stopped.   |

**12.1.4. Timer/Counter Control Register**Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>**TCON**SFR-Address 88<sub>H</sub>

(MSB)

(LSB)

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| TF1 | TR1 | TF0 | TR0 | IE1 | IT1 | IE0 | IT0 |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| <b>TF1</b> | Timer 1 overflow flag. Set by hardware on timer/counter overflow. Cleared by hardware when processor vectors to interrupt routine. |
| <b>TR1</b> | Timer 1 run control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn timer/counter on/off.   |
| <b>TF0</b> | Timer 0 overflow flag. Set by hardware on timer/counter overflow. Cleared by hardware when processor vectors to interrupt routine. |
| <b>TR0</b> | Timer 0 run control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn timer/counter on/off.   |
| <b>IE1</b> | Interrupt 1 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Cleared when interrupt processed.                    |
| <b>IT1</b> | Interrupt 1 type control bit. Set/cleared by software to specify edge/low level triggered external interrupts.                     |
| <b>IE0</b> | Interrupt 0 edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge detected. Cleared when interrupt processed.                    |
| <b>IT0</b> | Interrupt 0 type control bit. Set/cleared by software to specify edge/low level triggered external interrupts.                     |

## 13. Capture Reload Timer

Capture control timer is a 16 bit up counter, with special features suited for easier infrared decoding by measuring the time interval between two successive trigger events. Trigger events can be positive, negative or both edges of a digital input signal (Port 3.2 or 3.3). A built in Spike Suppression Unit (SSU) can be used for suppressing pulses with obviously too small or too long time duration at the beginning of an expected telegram, thereby relieving the FW of processing corrupted telegrams. This is especially useful in idle mode.

### 13.1. Input Clock

Input clock is  $f_{CCT}$  is same as system clock frequency divided by two. In normal mode system frequency is 33.33 MHz ( $f_{CCT} = 16.66$  MHz) and in slow down mode (SD mode) 8.33 MHz ( $f_{CCT} = 4.16$  MHz).

PR prescaler bit when set divides the input clock further by 2, PR1 divides further by 8.

Internal to the block change in SD mode is detected and frequency is adjusted accordingly so that maximum time resolution of 15.73 ms or 251.66 ms is achieved depending on Prescaler PR bits.

### 13.2. Reset Values

All the eight 8 bit registers RELL, RELH, CAPL, CAPH, MINCAPL, MINCAPH, CRTCON0 and CRTCON1 are reset to 00<sub>H</sub>.

## 13.3. Functional Description

### 13.3.1. Port Pin

Either Port P3.3 or P3.2 can be selected as capture input via SEL bit. Capture event can be programmed to occur on rising or falling edge or both using the bits RISE and FALL bits.

### 13.3.2. Slow-Down Mode

SD bit when set, reduces the system frequency to 8.33 MHz. However the clk to the counter has a fix frequency (for a particular prescaler value). This is achieved by a divide by 4 chain, which divides the incoming frequency by 4 when SD = 0 and feeds the incoming signal directly to the counter when SD = 1.

### 13.3.3. Run

When counter is started (RUN), 16 bit reload value is automatically loaded in the 16 bit counter. (Note: REL bit is irrelevant in case of RUN function). Setting run bit resets the FIRST and OV bit.

All the control bits PR, PLG, REL, RUN, RISE, FALL, SEL, Start, Int\_Src, SD can be changed anytime during the operation, these changes take immediate effect there is no protected mode when counter is running.

### 13.3.4. Overflow

In case no capture event occurs, counter keeps on counting till it overflows from FFFF<sub>H</sub> to 0000<sub>H</sub> at this transition OV bit is set. After the overflow counter keeps on counting. Overflow does not reload the reload value. Note that OV bit is set by counter and can be reset by software.

### 13.3.5. Modes

There are three different modes in which counter can be used.

- Normal Capture mode
- Polling mode
- Capture mode with spike suppression at the start of a telegram

**Table 13–1:**

| Mode                                | START | PLG |
|-------------------------------------|-------|-----|
| Normal capture mode                 | 0     | 0   |
| Capture mode with spike suppression | 1     | 0   |
| Polling mode                        | X     | 1   |

For each mode selection it is recommended to reset the RUN bit (if it is not already at 0), set the appropriate mode bit and then start the counter by setting the RUN bit.

For each of the capture mode the event is captured based on the CRTCON0 (RIISE) and CRTCON0 (FALL).



### 13.3.6. Normal Capture Mode

Normal capture mode is started by setting the RUN bit (0 → 1) and PLG = 0, start = 0. Setting RUN bit will reload the counter with reload value and reset the overflow bit and counter will start to count.

Upon event on the selected port pin, contents of the counter are copied to the capture registers CRT\_caph and CRT\_capl.

In capture mode if REL bit is set counter is automatically reloaded upon event with the reload value and starts to count. If however REL bit is not set then counter continues to count from the current value.

OV bit is not effected by the capture event.

**Note 1: Min\_cap register has no functionality in this mode.**

**Note 2: Interrupt would be generated from CRT, however it will only be registered in the int source register if intsrc bits in the CSCR1 are appropriately set. It is not required to use the CRT generated interrupt in this mode. Direct pin interrupt can be used.**

### 13.3.7. Polling Mode

Polling mode is started by setting the PLG bit, PLG = 1 (START bit is in don't care for this mode). Setting RUN bit will reload the counter with reload value and reset the overflow bit and start the counting.

In the timer polling mode, capture register mirrors the current timer value, note that in this mode any event at selected port pin is ignored. Upon overflow OV bit is set.

**Note 1: Interrupts are not generated as events are not recognized.**

### 13.3.8. Capture Mode with Spike Suppression at the Start of a Telegram

This mode is specially been implemented to prevent false interrupt from being generated specially in idle mode while waiting for a new infrared telegram.

This mode is entered by setting the START bit (PLG = 0). Software sets Start bit to indicate it is expecting a new telegram. Setting RUN bit will reload the counter with reload value and reset the overflow bit and start the counting.

### 13.3.9. First Event

On occurrence of capture event, counter value is captured and comparator then sets the First bit. Interrupt is suppressed. OV bit is reset and counter reloads the reload value (regardless of the status of REL bit) and starts counting again.

### 13.3.10. Second Event

On occurrence of second capture event, counter value is captured and interrupt is triggered if the capture value exceeds the value in the Min\_Cap register and the OV bit is not set. First bit is reset. Counter will now continue in the normal capture mode. Software may reset the START bit if the capture value is a valid pulse of a telegram.

If the pulse was invalid then software must stop the counter and start again (Run bit first reset and then SET) with start bit set to wait for a new telegram.

If Capture value is less then or equal to min\_cap value or OV bit has been set, that is spike has been detected and Interrupt is suppressed. OV bit would be reset counter would be reloaded with reload value (regardless of REL bit).

In this case If either RISE or FALL bit were set then counter will wait for the second event (FIRST = 1), if RISE and FALL both were set then counter will wait for the First event (FIRST = 0).

### 13.3.11. CRT Interrupt

CRT can generate interrupt when SSU is employed.

CRT unit uses the same interrupt line as  $\overline{\text{INT1}}$  and  $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ . The interrupt line is selected by the SEL bit.

Note that when using CRT to generate interrupt, the direct interrupt source from Port 3.2 or 3.3 (which ever is selected) should be switched to CRT (CSCR1(IntSrc0), CSCR1(IntSrc1)). If application uses port pins directly to generate interrupt, then these bits should be reset. Note that by default INT1 and INT0 are mapped to P3.3 and P3.2.

SSU generates interrupt signal as a pulse, which is captured in the int source register TCON (IE1 or IE0). While using this mode TCON (IT0 or IT1) must be set to 1 (edge triggered) and IRCON (EX1R or EX0R) must be set to 1 and IRCON(EX1F or EX0F) must be set to 0.

For further information on interrupts please refer to Section 7..

13.3.12. Counter Stop

Counter can be stopped any time by resetting the RUN bit. If counter is stopped and started again (reset and set the RUN bit), counter reloads with the RELOAD value and reset the OV bit.

13.4. Idle and Power-Down Mode

In idle mode CRT continues to function normally, unless it has been explicitly shut off by PSAVEX (PERI) bit.

In power down mode CRT is shut off.

13.5. Registers

The RELL and RELH are the reload registers (SFR address B7<sub>H</sub> and B9<sub>H</sub>), CAPH and CAPL are corresponding capture registers (SFR address BA<sub>H</sub> and BB<sub>H</sub>). MIN\_CAPL and MIN\_CAPH (BC, BB) are Minimum capture registers. CRTCON0 (E5<sub>H</sub>) and CRTCON1 are the control registers.

| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |    |     |     | CRTCON0 |      |      | SFR-Address BE <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |
|---|----|-----|-----|---------|------|------|--------------------------------------|
| OV  | PR | PLG | REL | RUN     | RISE | FALL | SEL                                  |

|      |   |
|------|---|
| OV   | Will be set by hardware, if counter overflow has occurred; must be cleared by software.   |
| PR   | If cleared, 2-bit prescaler; if set, 3-bit prescaler.   |
| PLG  | If set, Timer polling mode selected, capture function is automatically disabled, reading capture registers will now show current timer value. |
| REL  | If set, counter will be reloaded simultaneously with capture event.   |
| RUN  | Run/stop the CRT counter.   |
| RISE | Capture (and if REL = '1', reload) on rising edge.  |
| FALL | Capture (and if REL = '1', reload) on falling edge.   |
| SEL  | If set, P3.3 is selected for capture input, otherwise P3.2.   |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**CRTCON1**

SFR-Address BF<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |    |    |    |    |     |       |       |
|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-------|-------|
| -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | PR1 | First | Start |
|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-------|-------|

-- Reserved.

**PR1** 1: Divides input further by 8.  
0: Not divided by 8.

**First** 1: Indicates first event.  
0: Indicates not first event.

**Start** 1: Controller sets this bit enter the SSU mode and to indicate it is expecting a new telegram. When an event occurs caputr unit sets First bit. Upon next event, hardware resets the first bit and interrupt is generated based on Min\_cap register.  
0: Not SSU mode.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**CSCR1**

SFR Address DE<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|         |         |    |    |       |                         |                         |                         |
|---------|---------|----|----|-------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| IntSrc1 | IntSrc0 | -- | -- | ENARW | $\overline{A19\_P4\_4}$ | $\overline{A18\_P4\_1}$ | $\overline{A17\_P4\_0}$ |
|---------|---------|----|----|-------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|

**IntSrc0** 0: Port 3.3 is the source of the interrupt.  
1: SSU is the source of interrupt, (Application note: Use with SEL = 1).

**IntSrc1** 0: Port 3.2 is the source of the interrupt.  
1: SSU is the source of interrupt, (Application note: Use with SEL = 0).

-- Not used.

-- Not used.

**ENARW** See Section 3. for description of this bit.

$\overline{A19\_P4\_4}$  See Section 3. for description of this bit.

$\overline{A18\_P4\_1}$  See Section 3. for description of this bit.

$\overline{A17\_P4\_0}$  See Section 3. for description of this bit.

Table 13–2: Time Resolution

| SD | f <sub>sys</sub><br>MHz | PR1 | PR | f <sub>ctr</sub><br>MHz | f <sub>ctr</sub><br>MHz | Time Res.<br>ns | Max Pulse<br>Width<br>ms |
|----|-------------------------|-----|----|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 0  | 33.33                   | 0   | 0  | f <sub>sys</sub> /8     | 4.17                    | 240             | 15.73                    |
|    |                         | 0   | 1  | f <sub>sys</sub> /16    | 2.083                   | 480             | 31.46                    |
|    |                         | 1   | 0  | f <sub>sys</sub> /64    | .5208                   | 1920            | 125.83                   |
|    |                         | 1   | 1  | f <sub>sys</sub> /128   | .2604                   | 3840            | 251.66                   |
| 1  | 8.33                    | 0   | 0  | f <sub>sys</sub> /8     | 4.17                    | 240             | 15.73                    |
|    |                         | 0   | 1  | f <sub>sys</sub> /16    | 2.083                   | 480             | 31.46                    |
|    |                         | 1   | 0  | f <sub>sys</sub> /64    | .5208                   | 1920            | 125.83                   |
|    |                         | 1   | 1  | f <sub>sys</sub> /128   | .2604                   | 3840            | 251.66                   |

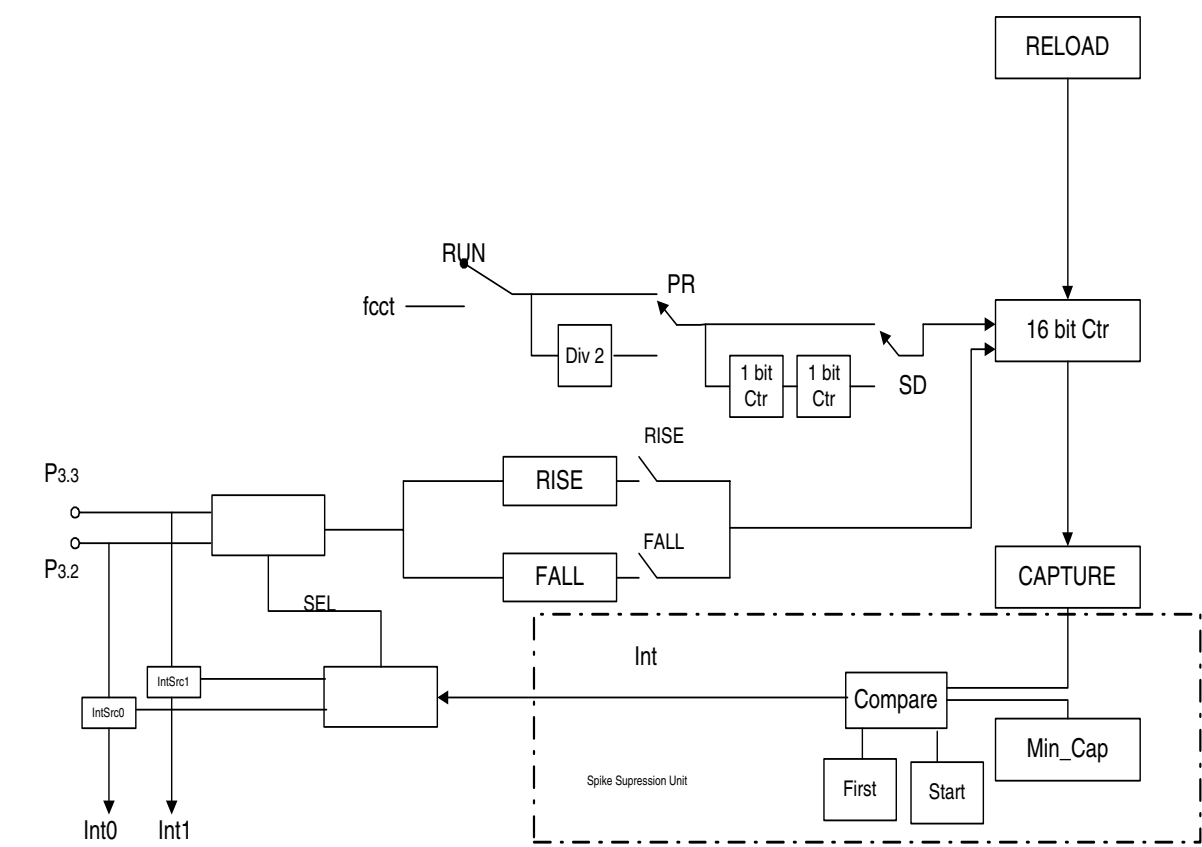


Fig. 13–1: Block Diagram

## 14. Pulse Width Modulation Unit

The Pulse Width Modulation unit consists of 6 quasi 8 bit and 2 quasi 14 bit PWM channels. PWM channels are programmed by special function registers and each individual channel can be enabled and disabled individually.

### 14.1. Reset Values

All the PWM unit registers PWME, PWCOMP8 0-5, PWCOMP14 0-1, PWMCOMPEXT14 0-1, PWML and PWMH are by default reset to 00<sub>H</sub>.

### 14.2. Input Clock

Input clock to PWMU fpwm is derived from  $f_{sys}$ .  $f_{sys}$  is 33.33 MHz in normal mode and in slowdown mode 8.33 MHz. In normal mode  $f_{sys}$  is divided by 2 and in slow down mode it is directly fed to the PWMU. Therefore PWM unit is counting at 16.5 MHz in normal mode and 8.25 MHz in slow down mode. If PR bit PCOMPEXT14 0 (bit 0) is set then the counting frequency is half of that.

In addition PWM\_direct bit makes it possible to run PWM counter at system frequency, ignoring PR bit and the built in divide by 2 prescaler.

To reduce electromagnetic radiation, the different PWM-channels are not switched on simultaneously with the same counter value, but delayed each with one clock cycle to the next channel:

Channel 0: 0 clock cycles delayed, Channel 1: 1 clock cycle delayed, ..., Channel 5: 5 clock cycles, ..., PWM14\_0: 6 clock cycles, PWM14\_1: 7 clock cycles delayed.

### 14.3. Port Pins

Port 1 is a dual function port. Under normal mode it works as standard Port 1, under alternate function mode it outputs the PWM channels.

P1.0 ... P1.5 corresponds to the six 8 bit resolution PWM channels PWM8\_0 ... PWM8\_5. P1.6 and P1.7 corresponds to the two 14 bit resolution PWM channels PWM14\_0 and PWM14\_1. PWM channels can be individually enabled by corresponding bits in the PWME register provided PWM\_Tmr bit is not set (timer mode start bit).

## 14.4. Functional Description

### 14.4.1.8-Bit PWM

The base frequency of a 8 bit resolution channel is derived from the overflow of a six bit counter.

On every counter overflow, the enabled PWM lines would be set to 1. Except in the case when compare value is set to zero.

In case the comparator bits (7 ... 2) are set to 1, the high time of the base cycle is 63 clock cycles. In case all the comparator bits (7 ... 0) including the stretching bits are set to 1, the high time of the full cycle (4 base cycles) is 255 clock cycles.

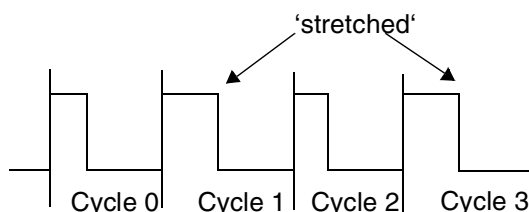
The corresponding PWCOMP8x register determines the duty cycle of the channel. When the counter value is equal to or greater than the compare value then the output channel is set to zero. The duty cycle can be adjusted in steps of fpwm as mentioned in Table 14–2.

In order to achieve the same resolution as 8-bit counter, the high time is stretched periodically by one clock cycle. Stretching cycle is determined based on the two least significant bits in the corresponding PWCOMP8x register.

The relationship for stretching cycle can be seen in Table 14–1 and the example below.

**Table 14–1:**

| PWCOMP8X | Cycle Stretched |
|----------|-----------------|
| Bit 1    | 1, 3            |
| Bit 0    | 2               |



**Fig. 14–1:**

**14.4.2.14-Bit PWM**

The base frequency of a 14 bit resolution channel is derived from the overflow of a eight bit counter.

On every counter overflow, the enabled PWM lines would be set to 1. Except in the case when compare value is set to zero.

The corresponding PWCOMP14x register determines the duty cycle of the channel. When the counter value

is equal to or greater than the compare value then the output channel is set to zero. The duty cycle can be adjusted in steps of fpwm as mentioned in Table 14–2.

In order to achieve the same resolution as 14bit counter, the high time is stretched periodically by one clock cycle. Stretching cycle is determined based on the bit 7...1 in the corresponding PWCOMPEXT14x register.

**Table 14–2:**

| PWCOMPEXT14X | Cycle Stretched             |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| Bit 7        | 1, 3, 5, 7, ..., 59, 61, 63 |
| Bit 6        | 2, 6, 10, ..., 54, 58, 62   |
| Bit 5        | 4, 12, 20, ..., 52, 60      |
| Bit 4        | 8, 24, 40, 56               |
| Bit 3        | 16, 48                      |
| Bit 2        | 32                          |

**14.5. Cycle Time****Table 14–3:**

| PWM Resolution | Slow Down (SD) | PWM_PR | PWM_direct | f <sub>sys</sub> [MHz] | Counting Rate [MHz] | Base cycle time [μs] | Full cycle time [μs] |
|----------------|----------------|--------|------------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 8 Bit          | 0              | 0      | 0          | 33.33                  | 16.66               | 3.84                 | 15.37                |
|                | 1              | 0      | 0          | 8.33                   | 8.33                | 7.68                 | 30.73                |
|                | 0              | 1      | 0          | 33.33                  | 8.33                | 7.68                 | 30.73                |
|                | 1              | 1      | 0          | 8.33                   | 4.16                | 15.37                | 61.46                |
|                | 0              | X      | 1          | 33.33                  | 33.33               | 1.92                 | 7.68                 |
|                | 1              | X      | 1          | 8.33                   | 8.33                | 7.68                 | 30.73                |
| 14 Bit         | 0              | 0      | 0          | 33.33                  | 16.66               | 15.37                | 983.4                |
|                | 1              | 0      | 0          | 8.33                   | 8.33                | 30.7                 | 1967                 |
|                | 0              | 1      | 0          | 33.33                  | 8.33                | 30.7                 | 1967                 |
|                | 1              | 1      | 0          | 8.33                   | 4.16                | 61.4                 | 3934                 |
|                | 0              | X      | 1          | 33.33                  | 33.33               | 7.68                 | 492                  |
|                | 1              | X      | 1          | 8.33                   | 8.33                | 30.7                 | 1967                 |

#### 14.6. Power Down, Idle and Power-Save Mode

In idle mode PWMU continues to function normally, unless it has been explicitly shut off by PSAVE(PERI). Note that in Psave mode all channels are frozen and pins are switch to port output mode making it possible to use the port lines.

In power-down mode PWMU is shut off.

#### 14.7. Timer

PWM unit uses a single 14 bit timer to generate signals for all 8 channels. Timer is mapped into SFR address space and hence is readable by the controller. Timer is enabled (running) if one of the PWM channels is enabled in PWME. If all the channels are disabled counter is stopped. Enabling one of the channels will reset the timer to 0 and start. Note that this reset is done for the first enabled channel. All other channels enabled later will drive the output from the current value of the counter.

If all the channels are disabled then it can be used as a general purpose timer, by enabling it with PWM\_Tmr bit in PWCH.

Setting PWM\_Tmr bit switches to timer mode and starts the timer, Timer always starts from a reset value of 0 (OV also reset to 0). Timer can be stopped any time by turning off the PWM\_Tmr bit.

When timer overflows it sets an over flow bit OV (bit 6) PWCH and interrupt bit CISR0 (PWtmr) in the central interrupt register. If the corresponding interrupt enable

bit is EPW(IEN2) is set the interrupt would be serviced. OV bit and PWtmr bits must be reset by the software.

Note that before utilizing the timer for PWM channels PWM\_Tmr bit must be reset.

Note that On reset CISR0 (PWtmr) bit is initialized to 0, however if counter overflows this bit might be set along with OV bit. However clearing OV bit does not clear the CISR0 (PWtmr) bit. Therefore software must clear this bit before enabling the corresponding interrupt.

#### 14.8. Control Registers

All control register for PWM are mapped in the SFR address space. Their address and bit description is given below.

Note that controller can write any time into these registers. However registers PWM\_COMP8\_X, PWM\_CPMP14\_X and PWM\_CPMPEXT14\_X, including the bits PWM\_direct and PWM\_PR are double buffered and values from shadow registers are only loaded into the main register in case timer overflows or timer is stopped (PWME = 00<sub>H</sub>) of 8 bit counter.

Overflow for 8 bit PWM occurs at the overflow of 6 bit counter and overflow for 14 bit counter occurs at the overflow.

When any of the PWM channels is not used associated compare register can be used as general purpose registers, except PWM\_En and PWCOMPEXT14\_0 bit 0 and 1.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWM\_En**

SFR-Address CE<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

| PE7 | PE6 | PE5 | PE4 | PE3 | PE2 | PE1 | PE0 |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

**E7 - E0; 0:** The corresponding PWM-channel is disabled.  
P1.i functions as normal bidirectional I/O-port.

**E7 - E0; 1:** The corresponding PWM-channel is enabled. PE0 ... PE5 are channels with 8-bit resolution, while PE6 and PE7 are channels with 14-bit resolution.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWM\_COMP8\_X = 0 to 5**

SFR-Address C1<sub>H</sub>-C6<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| PC8X_7 | PC8X_6 | PC8X_5 | PC8X_4 | PC8X_3 | PC8X_2 | PC8X_1 | PC8X_0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

## Bit 7 - Bit 2

These bits define the high time of the output. If all bits are 0, the high time is 0 internal clocks. If all bits are 1, the high time of a base cycle is 63 internal clocks.

## Bit 1

If this bit is set, every second PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock, regardless of the settings of Bit7 ... Bit2.

## Bit 0

If this bit is set, every fourth PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock, regardless of the settings of Bit7 ... Bit2.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWM\_COMP14\_X = 0, 1**

SFR-Address C7<sub>H</sub>, C9<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| PC14X_7 | PC14X_6 | PC14X_5 | PC14X_4 | PC14X_3 | PC14X_2 | PC14X_1 | PC14X_0 |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|

## Bit 7 - Bit 0

This bits define the high time of the output. If all bits are 0, the high time is 0 internal clocks. If all bits are 1, the high time of a base cycle is 255 internal clocks.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWCOMPEXT14Y = 0, 1**

SFR-Address CA<sub>H</sub>, CB<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| PCX14Y_7 | PCX14Y_6 | PCX14Y_5 | PCX14Y_4 | PCX14Y_3 | PCX14Y_2 | PCX14Y_1 | PCX14Y_0 |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

**Bit 7** If this bit is set, every second PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 6** If this bit is set, every fourth PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 5** If this bit is set, every eighth PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 4** If this bit is set, every 16<sup>th</sup> PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 3** If this bit is set, every 32<sup>th</sup> PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 2** If this bit is set, every 64<sup>th</sup> PWM-Cycle is stretched by one internal clock.

**Bit 1** PWCOMEXT14\_1 this bit is reserved for future use.

**PWM\_direct** PWCOMEXT14\_0, PWM\_direct: If set, the counting rate of the PWM (and the timer) is direct the incoming clock (33.33 MHz or 8.33 MHz in Slow-Down-Mode), then the Bit PWM\_PR is ignored. This bit effects all PWM channels and the timer-mode.

**Bit 0** PWCOMEXT14\_1 this bit is reserved for future use.

**PWM\_PR** PWCOMEXT14\_0,PWM\_PR when this bit is set input counting frequency is divided by 2 (PR bit).

**Note: The described operation is independent of the setting of PWCOMP14\_x.**

**Note: The stretch operation is interleaved between PWM-Cycles.**



Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWCL**

SFR-Address CC<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PWC_7 | PWC_6 | PWC_5 | PWC_4 | PWC_3 | PWC_2 | PWC_1 | PWC_0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

**Bit 7 - Bit 0**

This bits are the low order 8 Bits of the 14 Bit PWM-Counter. This register can only be read.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**PWCH**

SFR-Address CD<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|         |    |        |        |        |        |       |       |
|---------|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| PWM_Tmr | OV | PWC_13 | PWC_12 | PWC_11 | PWC_10 | PWC_9 | PWC_8 |
|---------|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|

**PWM\_Tmr**

Start/stop timer when all PWM channels are disabled.

If this bit is set, the PWM timer will be reset and starts counting.

If this bit is cleared, the PWM timer stops.

The PWM\_Tmr bit could not be written (set) if one of the PWM channels is enabled (PWM\_en not all zero).

PWM\_en register could not be written (set) if the PWM\_Tmr bit is set.

**OV**

Overflow bit for the timer mode.

**Bit 5 - Bit 0**

These bits are the high order 6 Bits of the 14 Bit PWM-Counter. This register can only be read.

## 15. Watchdog Timer

Watchdog timer is a 16 bit up counter which can be programmed to clock by  $f_{wdt}/2$  or  $f_{wdt}/128$ . The current count value of the watchdog timer is contained in the watchdog timer register WDT\_High and WDT\_Low, which are read-only register. Control and refresh function of the WDT is controlled by WDT\_Refresh and WDT\_Ctrl.

Additionally counter can be used as a general purpose timer in timer mode and the associated load register can be used either as load register or independent scratch register by the user.

### 15.1. Input Clock

Input clock  $f_{wdt}$  is same as CPU clock  $f_{sys}$  divided by 12 (i.e. machine cycle) is fed to the WDT either as divide-by-2 or divide-by-128. Divide factor is determined by WDT\_In (WDT\_ctrl) equal 0 and 1 respectively. WDT\_In has the same functionality in both watch dog mode and timer mode.

### 15.2. Starting WDT

WDT can be started if the WDT unit is in the Watch dog mode (WDT\_Tmr = 0).

WDT is started by setting the bit WDT\_Start in the WDT\_Ctrl register. Immediately after the start (1 clock cycle) the reload value from WDT\_Rel register is copied to the WDT\_High. WDT\_Low is always reset to 0 upon start.

Value can be written to WDT\_Rel any time during normal controller operation. Value is only loaded to the counter upon start, refresh or watchdog reset (if WDT\_nARST is set).

Note that Counter registers are read only and cannot be directly written by the controller.

### 15.3. Refresh

Once WDT is started it cannot be stopped by software. (Note that while WDT is running any change to WDT\_tmr bit would be ignored.) A refresh to the WDT is required before the counter overflows. Refreshing WDT requires two instruction sequence whereby first instruction sets WDT\_Ref bit and the next instruction sets the WDT\_Start bit. (For example if there is NOP between these two instructions, refresh would be ignored). This double instruction refresh minimize the chances of unintentional reset of the watchdog timer. Once set, WDT\_Ref bit is reset by the hardware after three machine cycles.

Refresh causes WDT\_low to reset to 00<sub>H</sub> and loads the reload value to from WDT\_Rel to WDT\_High.

### 15.4. WDT Reset

If software fails to refresh the WDT before the counter overflows after FFFF<sub>H</sub>, an internally generated watchdog reset is entered.

Watchdog timer reset differs only from the normal reset in that during normal reset all the WDT relevant bits in the three registers WDT\_Rel, WDT\_Refresh, WDT\_control are reset to 00<sub>H</sub>. Counter gets initialized to 0000<sub>H</sub>.

In case of watchdog reset, WDT\_Start and WDT\_nARST are not reset. Bit WDT\_Rst (read only) is set to indicate the source of the reset. In addition the WDT reset does not reset the PLL and clock generator.

If the WDT\_nARst bit is set then the values in the WDT\_Rel are retained after the WDT reset and counter starts with the same pre-scaler (WDT\_in) and reload configuration as before reset. If WDT\_nARst is not set then upon watchdog reset, WDT\_Rel is reset to 00h and WDT\_In to 0.

After the WDT reset counter starts again and must be refreshed by the processor in order to avoid further WDT resets.

Duration of the WDT reset is sufficient to ensure proper reset sequence.

### 15.5. Power-Down Mode

WDT is shut off during power down mode along with the rest of the peripherals.

In idle mode the WDT (in watchdog mode) is frozen, in timer mode it continues its operation. In power save mode PSAVE (PERI) watchdog continues its operation any write to this bit is ignored. If in timer mode the timer can be frozen by setting this bit.

### 15.6. Time Period

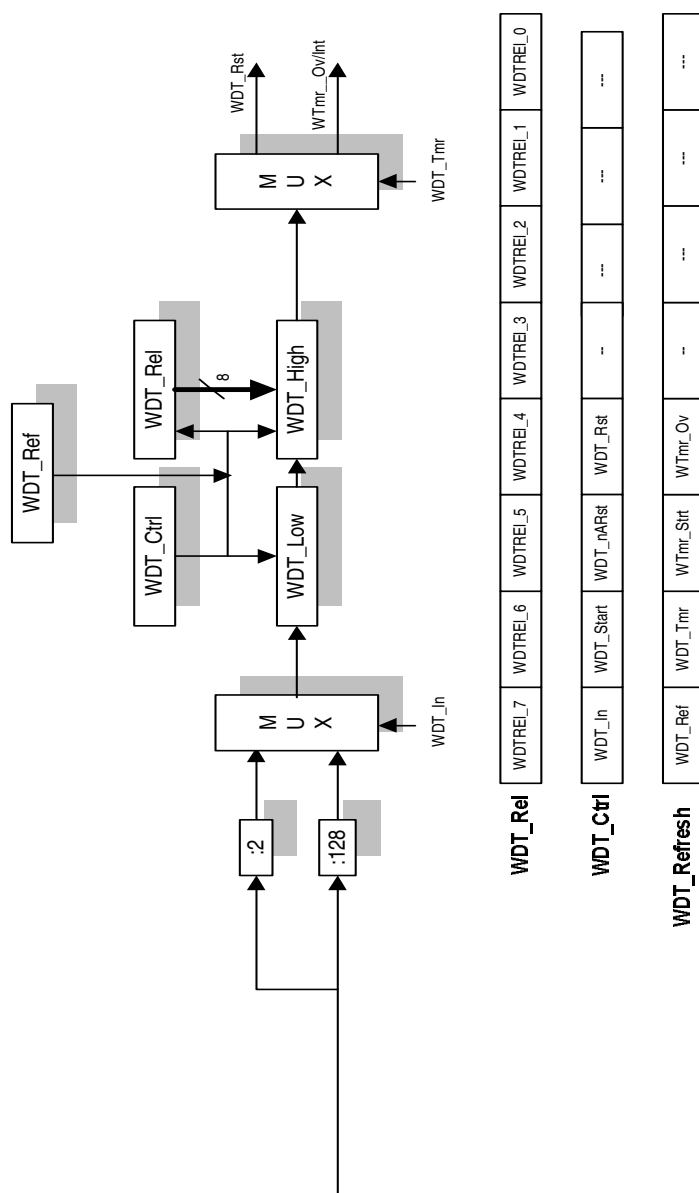
The period between refreshing the watchdog timer and the next overflow can be determined by the following formula.

$$PWDT = [2(1 + (WDT\_In) \times 6) \times (216 - (WDT\_Rel) \times 28)] / [FWDT]$$

Based on 33.33 MHz system clock minimum time period and maximum time period are as defined below.

**Table 15–1:**

|      | f <sub>system</sub> | WDT_In | WDT_Rel         | P <sub>WDT</sub> |
|------|---------------------|--------|-----------------|------------------|
| Min. | 33.33 MHz           | 0      | FF <sub>H</sub> | 184.3 μs         |
| Max. | 33.33 MHz           | 1      | 00 <sub>H</sub> | 3.02 s           |



**Fig. 15–1: Block Diagram**

## 15.7. WDT as General Purpose Timer

WDT counter can be used as a general purpose timer in timer mode and the associated load register can be used either as load register or independent scratch register for the programmer. This is achieved by setting WDT\_Tmr bit.

WDT\_Tmr bit can only be set before starting the WDT timer. Once watchdog timer is started it is not possible to switch to general purpose timer mode.

If WDT\_Tmr bit is set then timer can be started using WTmr\_Strt bit.

When timer is started it

- Resets the WTmr\_OV overflow flag.
- Loads the preload value from WDT\_Rel and starts counting up.

Upon overflow WDT\_Rst bit is not set neither is internal watchdog reset initiated. Overflow is indicated by the bit WTmr\_Ov (r/w). Overflow also sets the interrupt source bit CISR0 (WTmr). Both of these bits are set by hardware and must be cleared by software. If corresponding watchdog timer interrupt enable IE1 (EWT) bit is set then upon overflow interrupt is initiated.

After overflow timer starts to count from WDT\_Rel. It is possible for the processor to stop the timer by resetting the WTmr\_strt bit any time.

While timer is running, WDT\_Tmr bit cannot be toggled any write to this bit is ignored. To reset the WDT\_Tmr bit, either timer is stopped (WTmr\_Strt). However it is possible to stop the timer (WTmr\_Strt) and toggle (WDT\_Tmr) with the same instruction.

## 16. Analog Digital Converter (CADC)

TVTpro includes a four channel 8-bit ADC for control purposes. By means of these four input signals the controller is able to supervise the status of up to four analog signals and take actions if necessary.

This analog signals can be connected to the Port 2 inputs without a special configuration. If the port pins of Port 2 are used as digital input, make sure that the input high level never exceeds VDDA.

The input range of the ADC is fixed to the analog supply voltage range (2.5 V nominal).

The conversion is done continuously on all four channels the results are stored in the SFRs CADC0 ... CADC3 and updated automatically every 46  $\mu$ s. An interrupt can be used to inform the processor about new available results.

### 16.1. Power Down and Wake Up

During idle mode it is required to reduce the power consumption dramatically. In order to do this for the controller ADC a special wake up unit has been included. During this mode only the signal on input channel 1 is observed. As soon as the input signal has fallen below a predefined level an interrupt is triggered and the system wakes up. Two different levels are available. The first one corresponds to (fullscale-4 LSB) the second one to (fullscale-16 LSB). The actual level can be selected by a control bit (ADWULE).

Nevertheless it is possible to send even this wake up unit into power down (for detailed description refer to Section 8.3.).

### 16.2. Register Description

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### CADC0

SFR-Address D1  
(LSB)

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| CADC0(7) | CADC0(6) | CADC0(5) | CADC0(4) | CADC0(3) | CADC0(2) | CADC0(1) | CADC0(0) |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

#### CADC0(7..0):

#### ADC result of channel 1

After finishing the A to D conversion the processor is informed by means of an interrupt. The interrupt service routine can now take the conversion result of channel 1 from CADC0. The result will be available for about 46  $\mu$ s after the interrupt.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### CADC1

SFR-Address D2  
(LSB)

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| CADC1(7) | CADC1(6) | CADC1(5) | CADC1(4) | CADC1(3) | CADC1(2) | CADC1(1) | CADC1(0) |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

#### CADC1(7..0):

#### ADC result of channel 2

After finishing the A to D conversion the processor is informed by means of an interrupt. The interrupt service routine can now take the conversion result of channel 2 from CADC1. The result will be available for about 46  $\mu$ s after the interrupt.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## CADC2

SFR-Address D3  
(LSB)

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| CADC2(7) | CADC2(6) | CADC2(5) | CADC2(4) | CADC2(3) | CADC2(2) | CADC2(1) | CADC2(0) |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

### CADC2(7..0):

#### ADC result of channel 3

After finishing the A to D conversion the processor is informed by means of an interrupt. The interrupt service routine can now take the conversion result of channel 3 from CADC2. The result will be available for about 46 µs after the interrupt.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## CADC3

SFR-Address D4  
(LSB)

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| CADC3(7) | CADC3(6) | CADC3(5) | CADC3(4) | CADC3(3) | CADC3(2) | CADC3(1) | CADC3(0) |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

### CADC3(7..0):

#### ADC result of channel 4

After finishing the A to D conversion the processor is informed by means of an interrupt. The interrupt service routine can now take the conversion result of channel 4 from CADC3. The result will be stable for about 46 µs after the interrupt.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**CADCCO**

SFR-Address D5  
(LSB)

|  |  |  |        |     |     |     |     |
|--|--|--|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|  |  |  | ADWULE | AD3 | AD2 | AD1 | AD0 |
|--|--|--|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|

**AD0** Defines whether the port-pin is used as analog input or as digital input.

0: Port pin is digital input (the analog value has less precision).

1: Port pin is analog input (the digital value is always 0).

**AD1** Defines whether the port-pin is used as analog input or as digital input.

0: Port pin is digital input (the analog value has less precision).

1: Port pin is analog input (the digital value is always 0).

**AD2** Defines whether the port-pin is used as analog input or as digital input.

0: Port pin is digital input (the analog value has less precision).

1: Port pin is analog input (the digital value is always 0).

**AD3** Defines whether the port-pin is used as analog input or as digital input.

0: Port pin is digital input (the analog value has less precision).

1: Port pin is analog input (the digital value is always 0).

**ADWULE(4)** Defines threshold level for wake up.

A special wake up unit has been included to allow a system wake up as soon as the analog input signal on pin P2.0 drops below a predefined level.

ADWULE defines the threshold level.

ADWULE = 0: Threshold level corresponds to fullscale-4LSB. This means that if the digital input value drops below  $255 - 4 = 251$  an interrupt will be triggered.

In voltages that is  $2.5\text{ V} - 0.039\text{ V} = 2.461\text{ V}$ .

ADWULE = 1: threshold level corresponds to fullscale-16LSB. This means that if the digital input value drops below  $255 - 16 = 239$  an interrupt will be triggered.

In voltages that is  $2.5\text{ V} - 0.156\text{ V} = 2.344\text{ V}$ .

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## CISR0 bit addressable

SFR Address C0<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|     |     |      |     |     |       |     |     |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| L24 | ADC | WTmr | AVS | DVS | PWtmr | AHS | DHS |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|

**L24** Refer to Section 7.

**ADC** 1: Analog to digital conversion complete source bit set by hardware.  
0: Analog to digital conversion complete source bit must be reset by software.

**WTmr** Refer to Section 7.

**AVS** Refer to Section 7.

**DVS** Refer to Section 7.

**PWtmr** Refer to Section 7.

**AHS** Refer to Section 7.

**DHS** Refer to Section 7.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## CISR1 bit addressable

SFR Address C8<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |     |  |  |  |  |      |      |
|----|-----|--|--|--|--|------|------|
| CC | ADW |  |  |  |  | IEX1 | IEX0 |
|----|-----|--|--|--|--|------|------|

**CC** Refer to Section 7.

**ADW** 1: ADC wake up interrupt source bit set by hardware.  
0: ADC wake up interrupt source bit must be reset by software.

**IEX1** Refer to Section 7.

**IEX0** Refer to Section 7.



Default after reset: 00<sub>h</sub>  
(MSB)

**PSAVE bit addressable**

SFR-Address D8<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |    |    |      |       |         |      |      |
|----|----|----|------|-------|---------|------|------|
| -- | -- | -- | CADC | WAKUP | SLI_ACQ | DISP | PERI |
|----|----|----|------|-------|---------|------|------|

-- Not used.

**CADC**

CADC

0: Power save Mode not started.

1: Power save Mode started.

In Power save mode CADC is disabled but the CADC-Wake-Up-Unit is active.

**WAKUP**

Wake up of CADC

0: Power save Mode not started.

1: Power save Mode started.

In Power save mode ADC wake up unit of CADC is disabled.

Note that Power save mode of wake up unit is only useful in saving power when CADC bit is set.

**SLI\_ACQ**

Refer to Section 8.

**DISP**

Refer to Section 8.

**PERI**

Refer to Section 8.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## PCON

SFR-Address 87<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|      |     |      |    |     |     |     |      |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| SMOD | PDS | IDLS | SD | GF1 | GF0 | PDE | IDLE |
|------|-----|------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|

### SMOD

Refer to Section 11.

### PDS

Power Down Start Bit

0: Power Down Mode not started.

1: Power Down Mode started.

The instruction that sets this bit is the last instruction before entering power down mode. Additionally, this bit is protected by a delay cycle. Power down mode is entered, if and only if bit PDE was set by the previous instruction. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

The CADC is completely switched off (no wake up possible).

### IDLS

Idle Start Bit

0: Idle Mode not started.

1: Idle Mode started.

The instruction that sets this bit is the last instruction before entering idle mode. Additionally, this bit is protected by a delay cycle. Idle mode is entered, if and only if bit IDLE was set by the previous instruction. Once set, this bit is cleared by hardware and always reads out a 0.

The CADC is switched off but the CADC-Wake-Up-Unit is active.

### GF1

Refer to Section 11.

### GF0

Refer to Section 11.

### SD

Refer to Section 8.

### PDE

Refer to Section 8.

### IDLE

Refer to Section 8.

## 17. Sync System

### 17.1. General Description

The display sync system is completely independent from the acquisition sync system (CVBS timing) and can either work as a sync master or as a sync slave system. Talking about 'H/V-Syncs' in this chapter and in Section 18. always refers to display related H/V Syncs and never to CVBS related sync timing.

In sync slave mode TVTpro receives the synchronization information from two independent pins which deliver separate horizontal and vertical signals or a sandcastle impulse from which the horizontal and vertical sync signals are separated internally. Due to the not line locked pixel clock generation it can process any possible horizontal and vertical sync frequency.

In sync master mode TVTpro delivers separate horizontal and vertical signals with the same flexibility in the programming of these periods as in sync slave mode.

### 17.1.1. Screen Resolution

The number of displayable pixels on the screen is defined by the pixel frequency (which is independent from horizontal frequency), the line period and number of lines within a field. The screen is divided in three different regions:

#### Blacklevel Clamping Area

During horizontal and vertical blacklevel clamping, the black value (RGB = 000) is delivered on output side of TVT-pro. Inside this area the BLANK pin and COR pin are set to the same values which are defined as transparency for subCLUT0 (see also Section 18.4.7.). This area is programmable in vertical direction (in terms of lines) and in horizontal direction in terms of 33.33 MHz clock cycles.

#### Border Area

The size of this area is defined by the sync delay registers (SDH and SDV) and the size of the character display area. The color and transparency of this area is defined by a color look up vector (see also Section 18.4.3.).

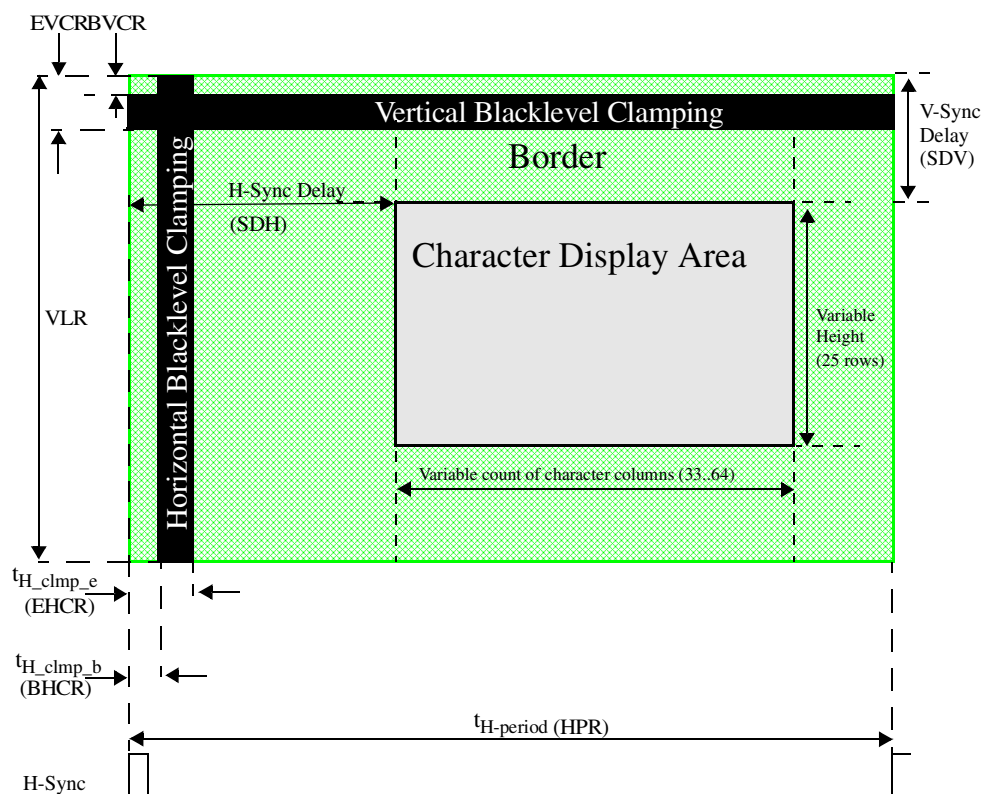


Fig. 17-1: TVTpro's Display Timing

## Character Display Area

Characters and there attributes which are displayed inside this area are free programmable according to the specifications of the display generator (see also Section 18.2.). The start position of that area can be shifted in horizontal and vertical direction by programming the horizontal and vertical sync delay registers (SDH and SDV). The size of that area is defined by the instruction FSR in the display generator.

Register which allow to set up the screen and sync parameters are given in Table 17–1.

User has to take care of setting PFR and SDH so that SDH/PFR is greater than 2  $\mu$ s.

Table 17–2 lists some of the possible display modes.

Note that Pixel clock (Pclk) must be appropriately selected to the nearest value in the registers Pclk 0 and Pclk 1.

Table 17–2 serves as an example, the free programming feature of Pixel clock between 10 to 32 MHz makes it possible to adjust and fine tune the display as per the application requirement.

**Table 17–1:** Overview on Sync Register Settings

| Parameters  | Register | Min. Value | Max. Value    | Step      | Default     |
|---|----------|------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| Sync Control Register                                       | SCR      | see below  |               |           |             |
| VL - Lines / Field  | VLR      | 1 line     | 1024 lines    | 1 line    | 625 lines   |
| T <sub>h-period</sub> - Horizontal Period                   | HPR      | 15 $\mu$ s | 122.8 $\mu$ s | 30 ns     | 64 $\mu$ s  |
| F <sub>pixel</sub> - Pixel Frequency                        | PClk     | 10 MHz     | 32 MHz        | 73.25 kHz | 12.01 MHz   |
| T <sub>vsync_delay</sub> - Sync Delay                       | SDV      | 4 lines    | 1024 lines    | 1 line    | 32 lines    |
| T <sub>hsync_delay</sub> - Sync Delay                       | SDH      | 32 pixel   | 2048 pixel    | 1 pixel   | 72 pixel    |
| BVCR - Beginning Of Vertical Clamp Phase                    | BVCR     | 1 line     | 1024 lines    | 1 line    | line 0      |
| EVCR - End Of Vertical Clamp Phase                          | EVCR     | 1 line     | 1024 lines    | 1 line    | line 4      |
| T <sub>h_clmp_b</sub> - Beginning Of Horizontal Clamp Phase | BHCR     | 0 $\mu$ s  | 122.8 $\mu$ s | 480 ns    | 0 $\mu$ s   |
| T <sub>h_clmp_e</sub> - End Of Horizontal Clamp Phase       | EHCR     | 0 $\mu$ s  | 122.8 $\mu$ s | 480 ns    | 4.8 $\mu$ s |

**Table 17–2:**

| 50 Hz/100 Hz | Character Display Mode | Pclk   | T <sub>Character display area</sub> |
|--------------|------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| 50 Hz        | 40 × 25                | 12 MHz | 40 $\mu$ s                          |
| 50 Hz        | 64 × 25                | 16 MHz | 48 $\mu$ s                          |
| 100 Hz       | 40 × 25                | 24 MHz | 20 $\mu$ s                          |
| 100 Hz       | 64 × 25                | 32 MHz | 24 $\mu$ s                          |

### 17.1.2. Sync Interrupts

The sync unit delivers interrupts (Horizontal and vertical interrupt) to the controller to support the recognition

of the frequency of an external sync source. These interrupts are related to the positive edge of the non delayed horizontal and vertical impulses which can be seen at pins HSYNC and VSYNC.

### 17.2. Register Description

Reset: A0<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### SCR1

SFR Address E1<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|          |             |             |        |        |        |        |        |
|----------|-------------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Reserved | RGB_<br>G_1 | RGB_<br>G_0 | COR_BL | VSU(3) | VSU(2) | VSU(1) | VSU(0) |
|----------|-------------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

Reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

#### SCR0

SFR Address E2<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|              |              |    |    |     |     |     |      |
|--------------|--------------|----|----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| RGB_D<br>(1) | RGB_D<br>(0) | HP | VP | INT | SNC | VCS | MAST |
|--------------|--------------|----|----|-----|-----|-----|------|

#### MAST

##### Master / Slave Mode

This bit defines the configuration of the sync system (*master or slave mode*) and also the direction (input/output) of the V, H pins.

0: Slave mode. H, V pins are configured as inputs.

1: Master mode. H, V pins are configured as outputs.

**Note: Switching from slave to master mode resets the internal H, V counters, so that the phase shift during the switch can be minimized. In slave mode registers VLR, and HPR are without any use.**

#### VCS

##### Video Composite Sync

VCS defines the sync output at pin V (*master mode only*).

0: At pin V the vertical sync appears.

1: At pin V a composite sync signal (including equalizing pulses, H-Sync and V-Syncs) is generated (VCS). The length of the equalizing pulses have fixed values as described in the timing specifications.

**Note: Don't forget to set registers VLR and HPR (64  $\mu$ s) according to your requirements.**

#### SNC

##### Sandcastle Sync (*slave mode only*)

Two input pins are reserved for synchronization. These input pins can be used as two separated sync inputs or as one single sync input. If two separated sync inputs is selected horizontal syncs are fed in at H pin and vertical syncs are fed in at V pin. If one single input pin is selected H pin is used as a sandcastle input pin.

0: H/V-sync input at H/V pins.

1: Sandcastle input H pin.

#### INT

##### Interlace / Non-interlace

TVTpro can either generate an interlaced or a non-interlaced timing (*master mode only*). Interlaced timing can only be created if VLR is an odd number.

0: Interlaced timing is generated.

1: Non-interlaced timing is generated.

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>VP</b>          | <b>V-Pin Polarity</b><br><p>This bit defines the polarity of the V pin (<i>master and slave mode</i>).</p> <p>0: Normal polarity (active high).</p> <p>1: Negative polarity.</p>   |
| <b>HP</b>          | <b>H-Pin Polarity</b><br><p>This bit defines the polarity of the H pin (<i>master and slave mode</i>).</p> <p>0: Normal polarity (active high).</p> <p>1: Negative polarity.</p>   |
| <b>RGB_D(1..0)</b> | <b>RGB/COR Delay Circuitry</b><br><p>In some applications of our customers the blanking is fed through other devices before it is used as a signal to control the multiplexing of video/RGB-mix. These other devices may create a delay of the blank signal. If no special effort is taken, this delay would create a vertical band at the beginning and the end of the active blanking zone.</p> <p>To compensate this, the generated RGB and the COR signals can be delayed by TVTpro in reference to the generated blank signal. This delay is always a multiple of the pixel-frequency from zero delay up to 3 times pixel delay:</p> <p>00: Zero delay of RGB/COR-output in reference to BLANK-output.</p> <p>01: One pixel delay of RGB/COR-output in reference to BLANK-output.</p> <p>10: Two pixel delay of RGB/COR-output in reference to BLANK-output.</p> <p>11: Three pixel delay of RGB/COR-output in reference to BLANK-output.</p> |
| <b>VSU (3..0)</b>  | <b>Vertical Set Up Time (<i>slave mode only</i>)</b><br><p>The vertical sync signal is internally sampled with the next edge of the horizontal sync edge. The phase relation between V and H differs from application to application. To guarantee (vertical) jitter free processing of external sync signals, the vertical sync impulse can be delayed before it is internally processed. The following formula shows how to delay the external V-sync before it is internally latched and processed.</p> $t_{V\_delay} = 3.84 \mu s \times VSU$  |
| <b>COR_BL</b>      | <b>3-Level Contrast Reduction Output</b><br><p>By means of COR_BL the user is able to switch the COR signal to a three level signal providing BLANK and contrast reduction information on pin BLANK/COR.</p> <p>0: Two level signal for contrast reduction.</p> <p>1: Three level signal;</p> <p>Three level signal      Level0: BLANK off; COR off.<br/>                                        Level1: BLANK off; COR on.<br/>                                        Level2: BLANK on; COR off.</p> <p><b>Note: Please refer to Section 20. for the detailed specification of these Levels.</b></p>   |
| <b>RGB_G_0</b>     | Used for DAC setup purpose. See also description of DAC.   |
| <b>RGB_G_1</b>     | Used for DAC setup purpose. See also description of DAC.   |
| <b>Reserved</b>    | Reserved for internal use. Must be set to 1. See also description of DAC.  |

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**CISR0 bit addressable**

SFR Address C0<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|     |     |      |     |     |       |     |     |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| L24 | ADC | WTmr | AVS | DVS | PWtmr | AHS | DHS |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| <b>L24</b>   | See Section 7.   |
| <b>ADC</b>   | See Section 7.   |
| <b>WTmr</b>  | See Section 7.   |
| <b>AVS</b>   | See Section 7.   |
| <b>DVS</b>   | 1: Display Vertical sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.<br>0: Display Vertical sync interrupt source bit must be reset by software.     |
| <b>PWtmr</b> | See Section 7.   |
| <b>AHS</b>   | See Section 7.   |
| <b>DHS</b>   | 1: Display horizontal sync interrupt source bit set by hardware.<br>0: Display horizontal sync interrupt source bit must be reset by software. |

DHS is used as a interface from H input pin to software interrupt routines. These interrupt routines can be used for detection of the frequency of a external sync source. Is set by the HW and must be reset by the SW.

DVS is used as a interface from V input pin to software interrupt routines. These interrupt routines can be used for detection of the frequency of a external sync source. Is set by the HW and must be reset by the SW.

Reset: 02<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**VLR1**

SFR Address EE<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |        |         |         |         |         |        |        |
|---|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| - | ODD_EV | VSU2(3) | VSU2(2) | VSU2(1) | VSU2(0) | VLR(9) | VLR(8) |
|---|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|

Reset: 71<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**VLR0**

SFR Address EF<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| VLR(7) | VLR(6) | VLR(5) | VLR(4) | VLR(3) | VLR(2) | VLR(1) | VLR(0) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

**ODD\_EV**      **ODD/EVEN detection** (*slave mode only*)

Used as a interface from the hardware odd/even field detection to software.

Set to 1 for odd fields and to 0 for even fields.

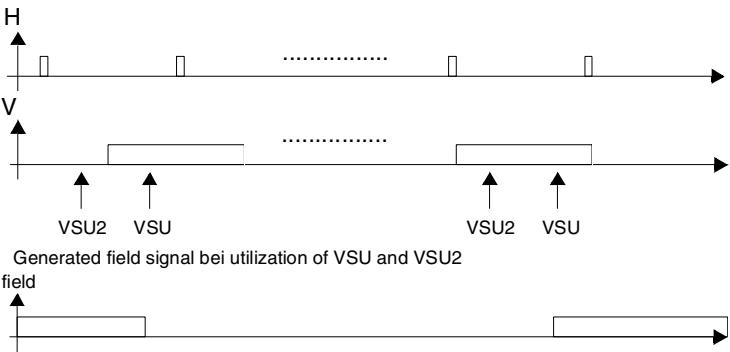
## VSU2(3 ... 0)

### Vertical Set Up Time 2 (slave mode only)

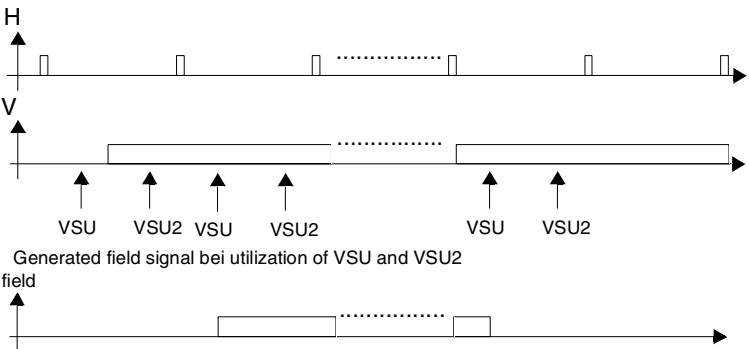
To realize the odd/even detection of a field next to VSU a second vertical setup time VSU2 is defined by the VSU2 register bits. This horizontal delay is used to recognize the VSYNC to another time than it is recognized at VSU. The field detection is realized by detecting if in between these two latching-points the VSync is rising or stable:

$$t_{V\_delay2} = 3.84 \mu s \times VSU2$$

If VSYNC became active for both VSU and VSU2, an odd field is detected. If VSYNC became active only for VSU an even field is detected:



with inverted VSU and VSU2:



## VLR (9 ... 0)

### Amount of Vertical Lines in a Frame (master mode only)

TVTpro generates in sync master mode vertical sync impulses. If for example a normal PAL timing should be generated, set this register to '625<sub>d</sub>' and set the interlace bit to '0'. The hardware will generate a vertical impulse periodically after 312.5 lines. If a non-interlace picture with 312 lines should be generated, set this register to '312' and set the interlace bit to '1'. The hardware will generate a vertical impulse every 312 lines. A progressive timing can be generated by setting VLR to '625' and interlace to '0'.



Reset: 08<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**HPR1**

SFR Address F1<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |   |   |   |         |         |        |        |
|---|---|---|---|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| - | - | - | - | HPR(11) | HPR(10) | HPR(9) | HPR(8) |
|---|---|---|---|---------|---------|--------|--------|

Reset: 55<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**HPR0**

SFR Address F2<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| HPR(7) | HPR(6) | HPR(5) | HPR(4) | HPR(3) | HPR(2) | HPR(1) | HPR(0) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

Bit

Function

**HPR (11 ... 0)****Horizontal Period Factor** (*master mode only*)

This register allows to adjust the period of the horizontal sync signal. The horizontal period is independent from the pixel frequency and can be adjusted with the following resolution:

$$t_{H\text{-period}} = HP \times 30 \text{ ns}$$

Reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**SDV1**

SFR Address E3<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |        |        |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------|--------|
| - | - | - | - | - | - | SDV(9) | SDV(8) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------|--------|

Reset: 20<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**SDV0**

SFR Address E4<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| SDV(7) | SDV(6) | SDV(5) | SDV(4) | SDV(3) | SDV(2) | SDV(1) | SDV(0) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

Bit

Function

**SDV (9 ... 0)****Vertical Sync Delay** (*master and slave mode*)

This register defines the delay (in lines) from the vertical sync to the first line of character display area on the screen.

Reset: 00<sub>H</sub> **SDH1** SFR Address E5<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB) (LSB)

|   |   |   |   |         |         |        |        |
|---|---|---|---|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| - | - | - | - | SDH(11) | SDH(10) | SDH(9) | SDH(8) |
|---|---|---|---|---------|---------|--------|--------|

Reset: 48<sub>H</sub> **SDH0** SFR Address E6<sub>H</sub>

(MSB) (LSB)

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| SDH(7) | SDH(6) | SDH(5) | SDH(4) | SDH(3) | SDH(2) | SDH(1) | SDH(0) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

Bit Function

**SDH (11 ... 0)** **Horizontal Sync Delay** (*master and slave mode*)

This register defines the delay (in pixels) from the horizontal sync to the first pixel character display area on the screen.

Reset: 0A<sub>H</sub> **HCR1** SFR Address E7<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB) (LSB)

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| EHCR(7) | EHCR(6) | EHCR(5) | EHCR(4) | EHCR(3) | EHCR(2) | EHCR(1) | EHCR(0) |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|

Reset: 00<sub>H</sub> **HCR0** SFR Address E9<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB) (LSB)

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| BHCR(7) | BHCR(6) | BHCR(5) | BHCR(4) | BHCR(3) | BHCR(2) | BHCR(1) | BHCR(0) |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|

Bit Function

**BHCR (7 ... 0)** **Beginning of Horizontal Clamp Phase** (*master and slave mode*)

This register defines the delay of the horizontal clamp phase from the positive edge of the horizontal sync impulse (normal polarity is assumed). The beginning of clamp phase can be calculated by the following formula:

$$t_{H\_clmp\_b} = 480 \text{ ns} \times BHCR$$

If EHCR is smaller than BHCR the clamp phase will appear during Hsync.

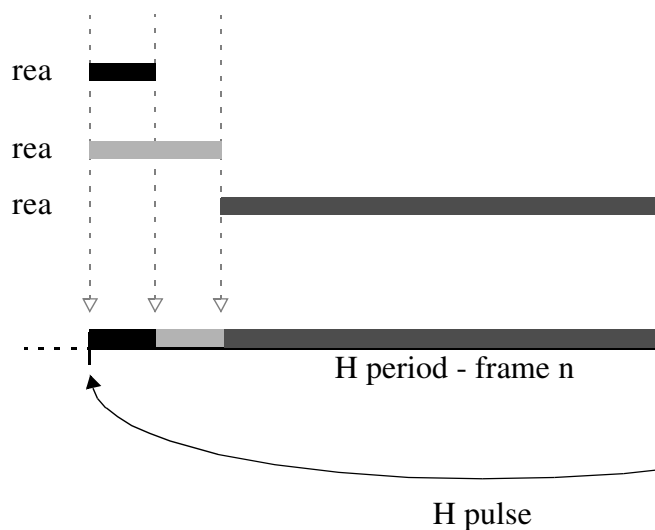
**EHCR (7 ... 0)** **End of Horizontal Clamp Phase** (*master and slave mode*)

This register defines the end of the horizontal clamp phase from the positive edge of the horizontal sync impulse (at normal polarity). The end of clamp phase can be calculated by the following formula:

$$t_{H\_clmp\_e} = 480 \text{ ns} \times EHCR$$

If EHCR is smaller than BHCR the clamp phase will appear during Hsync.

The clamp phase area has higher priority than the screen background area or the character display area and can be shifted independent from any other register.



**Fig. 17-2:** Priority of Clamp Phase, Screen Background and Pixel Layer Area

|                                 |              |   |   |   |   |         |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------|---|---|---|---|---------|--------------------------------------|
| Reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) | <b>BVCR1</b> |   |   |   |   |         | SFR Address EA <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |
| -                               | -            | - | - | - | - | BVCR(9) | BVCR(8)                              |

|                                 |              |         |         |         |         |         |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| Reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) | <b>BVCR0</b> |         |         |         |         |         | SFR Address EB <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |
| BVCR(7)                         | BVCR(6)      | BVCR(5) | BVCR(4) | BVCR(3) | BVCR(2) | BVCR(1) | BVCR(0)                              |

| Bit                   | Function  |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>BVCR (9 ... 0)</b> | <b>Beginning of Vertical Clamp Phase</b> ( <i>master and slave mode</i> )<br>This register defines the beginning of the vertical clamp phase from the positive edge of the vertical sync impulse (at normal polarity) in count of lines.<br>If EVCR is smaller than BVCR than the clamp phase will appear during Vsync. |

|                                 |   |   |   |       |   |         |         |                                      |  |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|-------|---|---------|---------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |   |   |   | EVCR1 |   |         |         | SFR Address EC <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |  |
| -                               | - | - | - | -     | - | EVCR(9) | EVCR(8) |                                      |  |

|                                 |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |                                      |  |
|---------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Reset: 04 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |         |         |         | EVCR0   |         |         |         | SFR Address ED <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |  |
| EVCR(7)                         | EVCR(6) | EVCR(5) | EVCR(4) | EVCR(3) | EVCR(2) | EVCR(1) | EVCR(0) |                                      |  |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Bit            | Function  |
| EVCR (9 ... 0) | <p><b>End of Vertical Clamp Phase</b> (<i>master and slave mode</i>)</p> <p>This register defines the end of the vertical clamp phase from the positive edge of the vertical sync impulse (at normal polarity) in count of lines.</p> <p>If EVCR is set to a value smaller than BVCR than the vertical blanking phase will last over the vertical blanking interval.</p> <p>If EVCR is smaller than BVCR than the clamp phase will appear during Vsync.</p> |

Reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

**SNDCTL**

SFR Address DF<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|   |     |              |              |              |              |              |              |
|---|-----|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| - | HYS | SND_V<br>(2) | SND_V<br>(1) | SND_V<br>(0) | SND_H<br>(2) | SND_H<br>(1) | SND_H<br>(0) |
|---|-----|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|

**SND\_H (2 ... 0) Slicing Level Horizontal Sync-Pulses** (*slave mode/sandcastle input*)

To fit the requirements of various applications the input circuit of the sandcastle decoder is free programmable. The slicing levels for the horizontal pulses can be varied in a range from 1.33 V up to 2.50 V in steps of about 0.16 V:

000: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 1.33 V

001: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 1.50 V

010: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 1.67 V

011: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 1.83 V

100: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 2.00 V

101: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 2.17 V

110: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 2.33 V

111: Horizontal Slicing Level set to 2.50 V

These are nominal values. They may also differ with supply voltage.

**SND\_V (2 ... 0) Slicing Level Vertical Sync-Pulses** (*slave mode/sandcastle input*)

To fit the requirements of various applications the input circuit of the sandcastle decoder is free programmable. The slicing levels for the vertical pulses can be varied in a range from 0.67 V up to 1.83 V in steps of about 0.16 V:

000: Vertical Slicing Level set to 0.67 V.

001: Vertical Slicing Level set to 0.83 V.

010: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.00 V.

011: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.17 V.

100: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.33 V.

101: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.50 V.

110: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.67 V.

111: Vertical Slicing Level set to 1.83 V.

These are nominal values. They may also differ with supply voltage.

**HYS****Definition of Hysteresis** (*slave mode/sandcastle input*)

Defines the voltage range for the Hysteresis:

0: Hysteresis set to 0.325 V.

1: Hysteresis set to 0.150 V.

Default after reset: 00<sub>H</sub>  
(MSB)

## CSCR0

SFR Address DD<sub>H</sub>  
(LSB)

|    |    |         |         |          |       |          |         |
|----|----|---------|---------|----------|-------|----------|---------|
| -- | -- | ENETCLK | ENERCLK | P4_7_Alt | VS_OE | O_E_P3_0 | O_E_Pol |
|----|----|---------|---------|----------|-------|----------|---------|

--

Not used.

**ENETCLK**

UART baud rate clk source bits

**ENERCLK**

Selects between 6 MHz and system clock. See test documentation.

For internal use only.

**P4\_7\_Alt**

Selects the output function of the port

0: Port function is selected.

1: Port 4.7 alternate function is selected (see VS\_OE).

For input port mode or slave mode VS input mode, port must be switched to input mode by writing 1 to the port latch.

**VS\_OE**

0: P4.7 alternate output mode, Odd/Even selected.

1: P4.7 alternate output mode, Vertical Sync selected.

Refer to Section 18., register SCR0, for Vertical Sync details.

**O\_E\_P3\_0**

0: Port 3.0 port mode selected.

1: Port 3.0 works as a Odd/even output.

**P\_E\_POL**

0: Odd = 1, Even = 0

1: Odd = 0, Even = 1

Note polarity is true for both P3.0 and P4.7.

## 18. Display

The display is based on the requirements for a Level 1.5 Teletext and powerful additional enhanced OSD features.

The display circuit reads the contents and attribute settings of the display memory and generates the RGB data for a TV back-end signal processing unit.

The display can be synchronized to external H/V sync signals (slave mode) or can generate the synchronization signals by itself (master mode). The display can be synchronized to 50 Hz as well as to 60 Hz systems. Interlaced display is supported for interlaced sync sources and non-interlaced ones.

### 18.1.Display Features

- Teletext Level 1.5 feature set
- ROM Character Set to Support all European Languages in Parallel
- Mosaic Graphic Character Set
- Parallel Display Attributes
- Single/Double Width/Height of Characters
- Variable Flash Rate
- Programmable Screen Size (25 Rows × 33 ... 64 Columns)
- Flexible Character Matrixes (HxV) 12 × 9 ... 16
- Up to 256 Dynamically Redefinable Characters in standard mode;  
1024 Dynamically Redefinable Characters in Enhanced Mode
- Up to 16 Colors for DRCS Character
- One out of Eight Colors for Foreground and Background Colors for 1-bit DRCS and ROM Characters
- Shadowing
- Contrast Reduction
- Pixel by Pixel Shiftable Cursor With up to 4 Different Colors
- Support of Progressive Scan

### 18.2.Display Memory

The display memory is located inside the internal XRAM. The start address of the display memory is at memory address DISPOINT<sub>H</sub>. This memory address is defined by the user due to a pointer. For each character position three bytes in the display memory are reserved. These three bytes are stored in a serial incremental order for each character and used to define the display attributes of each single character position. The complete amount of allocated display memory depends on the display resolution. In vertical direction the character display area is fixed to 25 rows. In horizontal direction the character display area can be adjusted from 33 up to 64 columns. Table 18–1 is an example for a character display area resolution of 25 rows and 40 columns:

Table 18–1: Display Memory Organization of TVTpro

| Row No. | Address   | i = 0d                 | ... | i = 39d |
|---------|---|------------------------|-----|---------|
| 0       | DISPOINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 0 <sub>H</sub><br>+ i × 3 <sub>H</sub>   | Character Display Area |     |         |
| 1       | DISPOINT <sub>h</sub><br>+ 78 <sub>H</sub><br>+ i × 3 <sub>H</sub>  |                        |     |         |
| 2       | DISPOINT <sub>h</sub><br>+ F0 <sub>H</sub><br>+ i × 3 <sub>H</sub>  |                        |     |         |
| ...     | ...   |                        |     |         |
| 23      | DISPOINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ AC8 <sub>H</sub><br>+ i × 3 <sub>H</sub> |                        |     |         |
| 24      | DISPOINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ B40 <sub>H</sub><br>+ i × 3 <sub>H</sub> |                        |     |         |

Following formula helps to calculate a memory address of a character position (X<sub>CH</sub>, Y<sub>CH</sub>) depending on the count of characters in horizontal direction (defined in the binary parameters (DISALH4 ... DISALH0)<sub>H</sub>) and a display start address DISPOINT<sub>H</sub>:

CHARADDRESS<sub>H</sub> = DISPOINT<sub>H</sub> + (Y<sub>CH</sub> × ((DISALH4 ... DISALH0)<sub>H</sub> + 21<sub>H</sub>) + X<sub>CH</sub>) × 3<sub>H</sub>



### 18.3.Parallel Character Attributes

The character display area content of each character position is defined by a 3 byte character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.) in display memory:

**Table 18–2:** Character Display Word: RAM Location: Display Memory

| Byte Pos. | Bit | Name  | Function                               | Remark   |
|-----------|-----|-------|--|--|
| 0         | 0   | CHAR0 | Used to choose a ROM or DRCS character | DRCS characters are defined by the user. Up to 16 different colors can be used within one DRCS; see also (see Section 18.3.1.)   |
|           | 1   | CHAR1 |  |  |
|           | 2   | CHAR2 |  |  |
|           | 3   | CHAR3 |  |  |
|           | 4   | CHAR4 |  |  |
|           | 5   | CHAR5 |  |  |
|           | 6   | CHAR6 |  |  |
|           | 7   | CHAR7 |  |  |
| 1         | 8   | CHAR8 |  |  |
|           | 9   | CHAR9 |  |  |
|           | 10  | FLASH | Control of flash modes                 | See also Section 18.3.2.   |
|           | 11  | UH    | Upper half double height               | See also Section 18.3.3.   |
|           | 12  | DH    | Double height                          | See also Section 18.3.3.   |
|           | 13  | DW    | Double width                           | See also Section 18.3.4.   |
|           | 14  | BOX   | Control for Boxes                      | See also Section 18.4.6.   |
|           | 15  | CLUT0 | Bit0/CLUT select                       | See also Section 18.4.7.   |
| 2         | 16  | CLUT1 | Bit1/CLUT select                       | See also Section 18.4.7.   |
|           | 17  | CLUT2 | Bit2/CLUT select                       | See also Section 18.4.7.   |
|           | 18  | FG0   | Foreground color vector                | Only used for ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters; Foreground-color is chosen if bit inside ROM-mask/RAM is set to '1'<br>see also Section 18.4.7.  |
|           | 19  | FG1   |  |  |
|           | 20  | FG2   |  |  |
|           | 21  | BG0   | Background color vector                | Used for ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters;<br>For 2-bit and 4-bit DRCS characters only used in flash mode; Background color is chosen if bit inside ROM-mask/RAM is set to '0'; see also Section 18.4.7./Section 18.3.2. |
|           | 22  | BG1   |  |  |
|           | 23  | BG2   |  |  |

18.3.1.Access of Characters

The DRCS characters and ROM characters are accessed by a 10-bit character address inside character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.).

18.3.1.1.Address Range from 0<sub>d</sub> to 767<sub>d</sub>

This address range can either be used to access ROM characters or to access 1-bit DRCS characters:

Table 18–3:

| CHAAC  | Description  |
|--|--|
| 0  | Normal mode:<br>Address range 0 <sub>d</sub> - 767 <sub>d</sub> is used to access ROM characters.          |
| 1  | Enhanced mode:<br>Address range 0 <sub>d</sub> - 767 <sub>d</sub> is used to access 1-bit DRCS characters. |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |  |

18.3.1.2.Address Range from 768<sub>d</sub> to 1023<sub>d</sub>

The address range from 768<sub>d</sub> to 1023<sub>d</sub> is reserved to address the DRCS characters. This range is split into three parts for 1-bit DRCS, 2-bit DRCS and 4-bit

DRCS. The boundary between 1-bit DRCS and 2-bit DRCS as well as the boundary between 2-bit DRCS and 4-bit DRCS are defined by two boundary pointers inside global display word (see also Section 18.4.):

Table 18–4: Boundary Pointer 1

| DRCS<br>B1_3                                       | DRCS<br>B1_2 | DRCS<br>B1_1 | DRCS<br>B1_0 | Description                        |
|--|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------------------|
| 0  | 0            | 0            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 768 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 0            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 784 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 1            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 800 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 1            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 816 <sub>d</sub>  |
| ...  |              |              |              | ...                                |
| 1  | 1            | 1            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 992 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 1  | 1            | 1            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 1008 <sub>d</sub> |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |              |              |              |                                    |

**Table 18–5:** Boundary Pointer 2

| DRCS<br>B2_3                                       | DRCS<br>B2_2 | DRCS<br>B2_1 | DRCS<br>B2_0 | Description                        |
|--|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------------------|
| 0  | 0            | 0            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 768 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 0            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 784 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 1            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 800 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 0  | 0            | 1            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 816 <sub>d</sub>  |
| ...  |              |              |              | ...                                |
| 1  | 1            | 1            | 0            | Boundary1 set to 992 <sub>d</sub>  |
| 1  | 1            | 1            | 1            | Boundary1 set to 1008 <sub>d</sub> |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |              |              |              |                                    |

Please notice: DRCSB2\_3 ... DRCSB2\_0 must be set to a greater or a equal value than DRCSB1\_3 ... DRCSB1\_0.

Below some examples can be found to show in which way the character addressing depends on the boundary definitions:

**Example 1:**

Boundary Pointer 1 set to 848<sub>d</sub>  
Boundary Pointer 2 set to 928<sub>d</sub>

**Table 18–6:**

| Character Address |                   | Description           |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| From              | To                |                       |
| 768 <sub>d</sub>  | 847 <sub>d</sub>  | 1-bit DRCS characters |
| 848 <sub>d</sub>  | 991 <sub>d</sub>  | 2-bit DRCS characters |
| 928 <sub>d</sub>  | 1023 <sub>d</sub> | 4-bit DRCS characters |

Example 2:

Boundary Pointer1 set to 848<sub>d</sub>  
Boundary Pointer2 set to 848<sub>d</sub>

Table 18–7:

| Character Address |                   | Description           |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| From              | To                |                       |
| 768 <sub>d</sub>  | 847 <sub>d</sub>  | 1-bit DRCS characters |
| 848 <sub>d</sub>  | 1023 <sub>d</sub> | 4-bit DRCS characters |

Example 3:

Boundary Pointer 1 set to 768<sub>d</sub>  
Boundary Pointer 2 set to 928<sub>d</sub>

Table 18–8:

| Character Address |                   | Description           |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| From              | To                |                       |
| 768 <sub>d</sub>  | 927 <sub>d</sub>  | 2-bit DRCS characters |
| 928 <sub>d</sub>  | 1023 <sub>d</sub> | 4-bit DRCS characters |

18.3.2.Flash

Bit FLASH inside character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.) is used to enable flash for a character:

Table 18–9:

| FLASH   | Description             |
|---|-------------------------|
| 0   | steady (flash disabled) |
| 1   | flash                   |
| see also Section 18.3. / Character Display Word (CDW) |                         |

The meaning of the flash attribute is different for ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters in comparison to the meaning of flash for 2-bit and 4-bit DRCS characters.

For flash rate control see also the global attribute "FLRATE1 ... FLRATE0" in Section 18.4.5..

18.3.2.1.Flash for ROM Characters and 1-Bit DRCS Characters

For ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters enabled flash causes the foreground pixels to alternate between the foreground and background color vector.

**18.3.2.2.Flash for 2-Bit and 4-Bit DRCS Characters**




For these characters enabled flash causes the DRCS pixels to alternate between the 2-bit/ 4-bit color vector and the background color vector which is defined by the parameters BG2 ... BG0 inside character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.).

**18.3.3.Character Individual Double Height**

Bit UH (Upper half, double height) marks the upper part of a double height character. It is only active, if the DH bit (Double Height) is set to '1'.

Table 18–10 shows the influence of the DH bit and the UH bit on the character 'A':

**Table 18–10:**

| DH  | UH | Display  |
|---|----|--|
| 0   | X  |   |
| 1   | 1  |   |
| 1   | 0  |  |
| see also Section 18.3. / Character Display Word (CDW) |    |  |

18.3.4.Character Individual Double Width

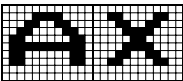
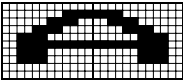
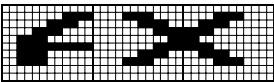
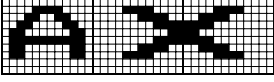
Bit DW (double width) marks the left half of a character with double width.

The character to its right will be overwritten by the right half.

If the DW bit of the following character (here the 'X') is also set to '1'; the right half of the 'A' is overwritten by the left half of the 'X'.

If a character is displayed in double width mode the attribute settings of the left character position are used to display the whole character.

Table 18–11:

| DW Bit  |                 | Display   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| Left Character  | Right Character |   |
| 0   | 0               |    |
| 1   | 0               |    |
| 1   | 1               |  |
| 0   | 1               |  |
| see also Section 18.3. / Character Display Word (CDW) |                 |   |

**18.4.Global OSD Attributes**

Next to the parallel attributes stored inside character display word there are global attributes. The settings of the global attributes affect the full screen.

The settings of the global OSD attributes are stored in the global display word (GDW; see also Section 18.4.) within 10 Bytes in the XRAM. The location of the GDW is defined by a programmable pointer (see also Section 18.6.).

**Table 18–12:**

| Byte Pos. | Bit | Name     | Function   | Cross Reference           |
|-----------|-----|----------|--|---------------------------|
| 0         | 0   | DISALH0  | Count of display columns in horizontal direction       | see also Section 18.4.1.  |
|           | 1   | DISALH1  |  |                           |
|           | 2   | DISALH2  |  |                           |
|           | 3   | DISALH3  |  |                           |
|           | 4   | DISALH4  |  |                           |
|           | 5   | PROGRESS | Used to enable progressive scan mode.                  | see also Section 18.4.10. |
|           | 6   | ---      | Reserved.  | ---                       |
|           | 7   | ---      | Reserved.  | ---                       |
| 1         | 0   | CURSEN   | Enables cursor function.                               | see also Section 18.4.2.  |
|           | 1   | CURHOR0  | Horizontal pixel shift of cursor to character position |                           |
|           | 2   | CURHOR1  |  |                           |
|           | 3   | CURHOR2  |  |                           |
|           | 4   | CURHOR3  |  |                           |
|           | 5   | CURVER0  | Vertical pixel shift of cursor to character position   |                           |
|           | 6   | CURVER1  |  |                           |
|           | 7   | CURVER2  |  |                           |

Table 18–12:

| Byte Pos. | Bit | Name       | Function  | Cross Reference  |                          |
|-----------|-----|------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| 2         | 0   | CURVER3    | Vertical pixel shift of cursor to character position        | see also Section 18.4.2.   |                          |
|           | 1   | POSHOR0    | Horizontal character position of cursor                     |  |                          |
|           | 2   | POSHOR1    |   |  |                          |
|           | 3   | POSHOR2    |   |  |                          |
|           | 4   | POSHOR3    |   |  |                          |
|           | 5   | POSHOR4    |   |  |                          |
|           | 6   | POSHOR5    |   |  |                          |
|           | 7   | POSVER0    | Vertical character position of cursor                       |  |                          |
| 3         | 0   | POSVER1    |   |  |                          |
|           | 1   | POSVER2    |   |  |                          |
|           | 2   | POSVER3    |   |  |                          |
|           | 3   | POSVER4    |   |  |                          |
|           | 4   | GLBT0_BOX1 |   | Used to enable transparency of Box1. CLUT transparency of subCLUT0 can be overruled for destined pixels inside Box1. | see also Section 18.4.6. |
|           | 5   | GLBT1_BOX1 |   |  |                          |
|           | 6   | GLBT2_BOX1 |   |  |                          |
|           | 7   | ---        | Reserved.   | ---  |                          |
| 4         | 0   | BRDCOL0    | Color vector of border                                      | see also Section 18.4.3.   |                          |
|           | 1   | BRDCOL1    |   |  |                          |
|           | 2   | BRDCOL2    |   |  |                          |
|           | 3   | BRDCOL3    |   |  |                          |
|           | 4   | BRDCOL4    |   |  |                          |
|           | 5   | BRDCOL5    |   |  |                          |
|           | 6   | BLA_BOX1   | Used to define the overruling transparency levels for Box1. | see also Section 18.4.6.   |                          |
|           | 7   | COR_BOX1   |   |  |                          |



Table 18–12:

| Byte Pos. | Bit | Name       | Function   | Cross Reference          |
|-----------|-----|------------|--|--------------------------|
| 5         | 0   | GDDH0      | Double height of the full screen   | see also Section 18.4.4. |
|           | 1   | GDDH1      |  |                          |
|           | 2   | GDDH2      |  |                          |
|           | 3   | GLBT0_BOX0 | Used to enable transparency of Box0. CLUT transparency of subCLUT0 can be overruled for destined pixels inside Box0. | see also Section 18.4.6. |
|           | 4   | GLBT1_BOX0 |  |                          |
|           | 5   | GLBT2_BOX0 |  |                          |
|           | 6   | BLA_BOX0   | Used to define the overruling transparency levels for Box0.  | see also Section 18.4.6. |
|           | 7   | COR_BOX0   |  |                          |
| 6         | 0   | CHADRC0    | Defines vertical resolution of DRCS characters.  | see also Section 18.4.8. |
|           | 1   | CHADRC1    |  |                          |
|           | 2   | CHADRC2    |  |                          |
|           | 3   | CHAROM0    | Defines vertical resolution of ROM characters.   |                          |
|           | 4   | CHAROM1    |  |                          |
|           | 5   | CHAROM2    |  |                          |
|           | 6   | CHAAC      | Defines character access mode.   | see also Section 18.3.1. |
|           | 7   | ---        | Reserved.  | ---                      |
| 7         | 0   | DRCSB1_0   | Used to define the boundary pointer 1 for DRCS addressing.   | see also Section 18.3.1. |
|           | 1   | DRCSB1_1   |  |                          |
|           | 2   | DRCSB1_2   |  |                          |
|           | 3   | DRCSB1_3   |  |                          |
|           | 4   | DRCSB2_0   | Used to define the boundary pointer 2 for DRCS addressing.   | see also Section 18.3.1. |
|           | 5   | DRCSB2_1   |  |                          |
|           | 6   | DRCSB2_2   |  |                          |
|           | 7   | DRCSB2_3   |  |                          |

Table 18–12:

| Byte Pos. | Bit | Name         | Function   | Cross Reference             |
|-----------|-----|--------------|--|-----------------------------|
| 8         | 0   | SHEN         | Enables shadow.  | see also<br>Section 18.4.9. |
|           | 1   | SHEAWE       | Defines if east or west shadow is processed.                     |                             |
|           | 2   | SHCOL0       | Defines the shadow color vector.                                 |                             |
|           | 3   | SHCOL1       |  |                             |
|           | 4   | SHCOL2       |  |                             |
|           | 5   | SHCOL3       |  |                             |
|           | 6   | SHCOL4       |  |                             |
|           | 7   | SHCOL5       |  |                             |
| 9         | 0   | CURCLUT0     | Used to choose the foreground vector for the cursor (0 ... 63).  | see also<br>Section 18.4.2. |
|           | 1   | CURCLUT1     |  |                             |
|           | 2   | CURCLUT2     |  |                             |
|           | 3   | FLRATE0      | Defines the flash rate for flashing characters.                  | see also<br>Section 18.4.5. |
|           | 4   | FLRATE1      |  |                             |
|           | 5   | HDWCLUTCOR   | Defines the level of COR for the colors of the hardwired CLUT.   | see also<br>Section 18.4.7. |
|           | 6   | HDWCLUTBLANK | Defines the level of BLANK for the colors of the hardwired CLUT. | see also<br>Section 18.4.7. |
|           | 7   | ---          | Reserved.  | ---                         |

### 18.4.1.Character Display Area Resolution

The count of rows of the character display area can be adjusted in a range from 33 to 64 columns in horizontal direction. In vertical direction the character display area is fixed to 25 rows. It depends on the settings for synchronization mode, pixel frequency and character

matrix if all these columns are visible on the tube. The programmable parameters DISALH4 to DISALH0 are the binary representation of a offset value. This offset value plus 33<sub>d</sub> gives the count of columns:

Examples for the settings:

**Table 18–13:**

| DISALH4  | DISALH3 | DISALH2 | DISALH1 | DISALH0 | Description |
|--|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------------|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 33 columns  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 1       | 34 columns  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 1       | 0       | 35 columns  |
| ...  |         |         |         |         | ...         |
| 0  | 1       | 1       | 1       | 1       | 48 columns  |
| 1  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 49 columns  |
| ...  |         |         |         |         | ...         |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 1       | 0       | 63 columns  |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 1       | 1       | 64 columns  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |         |         |             |

### 18.4.2.Cursor

The 2-bit color vector matrix of the cursor is stored in the XRAM. A programmable pointer is used, so that the matrix can be stored at any location inside the XRAM (see also Section 18.6.3.).

The cursor matrix has the same resolution as the character matrix (see also Section 18.4.8.).

If Global Display Double Height (see also Section 18.4.4.) is set to double height, the rows which are displayed in double height the cursor is also displayed in double height.

played in double height. For rows which are displayed in normal height, the cursor is also displayed in normal height. If cursor is displayed over two rows and one of these rows is displayed in double height, and the other is displayed in normal height, cursor is also partly displayed in double height and partly in normal height. Cursor-Pixels which are shifted to a non-visible row are also not displayed on the screen.

The cursor can be shifted in horizontal and vertical direction pixel by pixel all over the character display area.

**Table 18–14:**

| CURSEN   | Description          |
|--|----------------------|
| 0  | Cursor mode disabled |
| 1  | Cursor mode enabled  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |                      |

The display position of the cursor is determined by a display column value, a display row value and on pixel level by a pixel shift in horizontal and vertical direction.

Cursor can not be shifted more than one character height and one character width on pixel level. Cursor is clipped at border. In full screen double height mode

(see also Section 18.4.4.) cursor is also displayed in double height.

The pixel shift value is always related to a south-east shift:

The pixel shift is determined by the following parameters:

**Table 18–15:**

| CURHOR3  | CURHOR2 | CURHOR1 | CURHOR0 | Description            |
|--|---------|---------|---------|------------------------|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | Horizontal shift of 0  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 1       | Horizontal shift of 1  |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 0       | Horizontal shift of 2  |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 1       | Horizontal shift of 3  |
| ...  |         |         |         | ...                    |
| 1  | 0       | 1       | 1       | Horizontal shift of 11 |
| 1  | 1       | X       | X       | not allowed            |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |         |                        |

**Table 18–16:**

| CURVER3  | CURVER2 | CURVER1 | CURVER0 | Description          |
|--|---------|---------|---------|----------------------|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | Vertical shift of 0  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 1       | Vertical shift of 1  |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 0       | Vertical shift of 2  |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 1       | Vertical shift of 3  |
| ...  |         |         |         | ...                  |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 0       | Vertical shift of 14 |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 1       | Vertical shift of 15 |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |         |                      |

The character position of the cursor is determined by the following parameters:

**Table 18–17:**

| POS<br>HOR5  | POS<br>HOR4 | POS<br>HOR3 | POS<br>HOR2 | POS<br>HOR1 | POS<br>HOR0 | Description                    |
|--|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           | Horizontal character column 0  |
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           | 1           | Horizontal character column 1  |
| ...  |             |             |             |             |             | ...                            |
| 1  | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | 0           | Horizontal character column 62 |
| 1  | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | Horizontal character column 63 |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |             |             |             |             |             |                                |

**Table 18–18:**

| POS<br>VER4  | POS<br>VER3 | POS<br>VER2 | POS<br>VER1 | POS<br>VER0 | Description               |
|--|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           | Vertical character row 0  |
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 0           | 1           | Vertical character row 1  |
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 1           | 0           | Vertical character row 2  |
| 0  | 0           | 0           | 1           | 1           | Vertical character row 3  |
| ...  |             |             |             |             | ...                       |
| 1  | 1           | 1           | 1           | 0           | Vertical character row 30 |
| 1  | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | Vertical character row 31 |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |             |             |             |             |                           |

Character position and pixel position have to be changed in parallel. Otherwise it may appear that the character position already has been changed to a new position, but the pixel position is still set to the former value. This may cause a “jumping” cursor.

To avoid this “jumping” cursor there is a EN\_LD\_GDW (enable load GDW) bit in the SFR bank. If this bit is set to ‘0’ the global display word can be changed without any effect on the screen and in consequence the cursor position can be changed without any effect on the screen. To bring the effect to character display area, the LOAD bit has to be set to 1 for at least one V period (approximately 50 ms).

The cursor is handled as a layer above the character display area. Pixels of the 2-bit cursor bitplane which are set to ‘00’ are transparent to the OSD/Video layer below. So the cursor can be transparent to the OSD (in case of no transparency of OSD) or to video (in case of transparency of OSD).

Example:

DRCS-character  
stored at 896<sub>d</sub>:

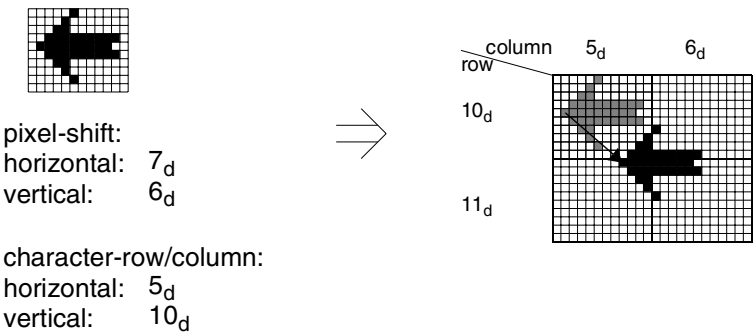


Fig. 18–1: Positioning of HW Cursor

One out of 8 subCLUTs is used to display the cursor.  
The parameters CURCLUT2 ... CURCLUT0 are used  
to define the subCLUT to be used:

Table 18–19:

| CUR<br>CLUT2                                       | CUR<br>CLUT1 | CUR<br>CLUT0 | Description   |
|--|--------------|--------------|---|
| 0  | 0            | 0            | Used to select the subCLUT which is used for color look up of the cursor<br>(0 ... 7) |
| 0  | 0            | 1            |   |
| 0  | 1            | 0            |   |
| 0  | 1            | 1            |   |
| ...  |              |              |   |
| 1  | 1            | 0            |   |
| 1  | 1            | 1            |   |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |              |              |   |

For detailed information of CLUT access see  
Section 18.4.7.

### 18.4.3.Border Color

Next to the character display area in which the characters are displayed there is a area which is surrounding

the character display area. The visibility of this border area depends on the width and height of the character display area. The user is free to define the color vector of this border:

**Table 18–20:**

| BRDCOL5  | BRDCOL4 | BRDCOL3 | BRDCOL2 | BRDCOL1 | BRDCOL0 | Description  |
|--|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | Defines a color vector for the border;<br>see also Section 18.4.7. |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 1       |  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 1       | 0       |  |
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 1       | 1       |  |
| ...  |         |         |         |         |         |  |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 1       | 1       | 0       |  |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 1       | 1       | 1       |  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |         |         |         |  |

### 18.4.4.Full Screen Double Height

If double height is enabled for the full screen each line of the OSD is repeated twice at the RGB output. As a result, characters which are normally displayed in normal height, are now displayed in double height and characters which are normally displayed in double height are now displayed in quadruple height.

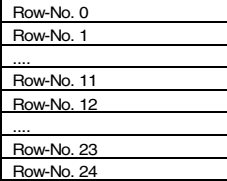
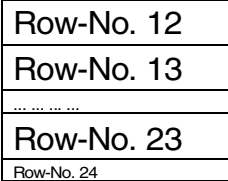
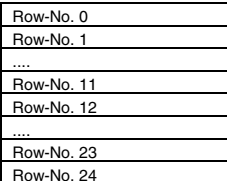
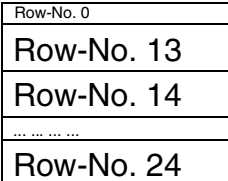
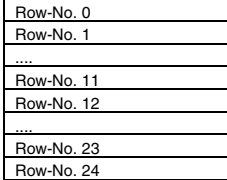
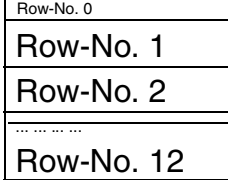
Row 0 and 24 are handled in a special way. If double height is selected for the full screen these two rows can be fixed to normal display (each line of these rows is repeated only once).

In double height mode user may want to start the processing of the display at row 12 and not at row 0. To decide this, three bits are used as a global attribute:

**Table 18–21:**

| GDDH2                 | GDDH1 | GDDH0 | Display Area  |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
|-----------------------|-------|-------|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|------|--|-----------------------|---|------------|---|------------|---|------------|---|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------------------|------------|------|------------|------------|
| 0                     | 0     | 0     | <p>Full Screen Normal Height:</p> <p>Memory organization:</p> <table><tr><td>Row-No. 0</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 1</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>....</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 11</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 12</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>....</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 23</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 24</td><td>→</td></tr></table> <p>Display Appearance:</p> <table><tr><td>Row-No. 0</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 1</td></tr><tr><td>....</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 12</td></tr><tr><td>....</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 23</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 24</td></tr></table> | Row-No. 0 | → | Row-No. 1 | → | .... |  | Row-No. 11            | → | Row-No. 12 | → | ....       |   | Row-No. 23 | → | Row-No. 24 | →         | Row-No. 0 | Row-No. 1  | ....       | Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _ | Row-No. 12 | .... | Row-No. 23 | Row-No. 24 |
| Row-No. 0             | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 1             | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 11            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 12            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 23            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 24            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 0             |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 1             |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _ |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 12            |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 23            |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 24            |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| 0                     | 0     | 1     | <p>Full Screen Double Height:</p> <p>Rows 0-11 are displayed in double height.</p> <p>Row 24 is settled on bottom of display in normal height.</p> <p>Memory organization:</p> <table><tr><td>Row-No. 0</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 1</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>....</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>....</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 23</td><td>→</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 24</td><td>→</td></tr></table> <p>Display Appearance:</p> <table><tr><td>Row-No. 0</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 1</td></tr><tr><td>... ..</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 11</td></tr><tr><td>Row-No. 24</td></tr></table>  | Row-No. 0 | → | Row-No. 1 | → | .... |  | Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _ | → | ....       |   | Row-No. 23 | → | Row-No. 24 | → | Row-No. 0  | Row-No. 1 | ... ..    | Row-No. 11 | Row-No. 24 |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 0             | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 1             | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 11    _ _ _ _ | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ....                  |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 23            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 24            | →     |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 0             |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 1             |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| ... ..                |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 11            |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |
| Row-No. 24            |       |       |   |           |   |           |   |      |  |                       |   |            |   |            |   |            |   |            |           |           |            |            |                       |            |      |            |            |

Table 18–21:

| GDDH2  | GDDH1 | GDDH0 | Display Area  |
|--|-------|-------|---|
| 0  | 1     | 0     | <p>Full Screen Double Height:</p> <p>Rows 12-23 are displayed in double height.</p> <p>Row 24 is settled on bottom of display in normal height.</p> <p>Memory organization: </p> <p>Display Appearance: </p> |
| 0  | 1     | 1     | <p>Full Screen Double Height:</p> <p>Rows 13-24 are displayed in double height.</p> <p>Row 0 is settled on top of display in normal height.</p> <p>Memory organization: </p> <p>Display Appearance: </p>   |
| 1  | X     | X     | <p>Full Screen Double Height:</p> <p>Rows 1-12 are displayed in double height.</p> <p>Row 0 is settled on top of display in normal height.</p> <p>Memory organization: </p> <p>Display Appearance: </p>  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |       |       |   |



### 18.4.5.Flash Rate Control

This attribute is used to control the flash rate for the full screen. All the characters on the screen for which flash is enabled are flashing with same frequency and in same phase.

**Table 18–22:**

| FLRATE1  | FLRATE0 | Description  |
|--|---------|--|
| 0  | 0       | Slow flash rate.<br>The flash rate is derived from display V pulse.<br>For 50 Hz systems Flash rate is approximately 0.5 Hz.<br>Duty cycle is approximately 50%. |
| 0  | 1       | Medium flash rate.<br>The flash rate is derived from the V pulse.<br>For 50 Hz systems Flash rate is approximately 1.0 Hz.<br>Duty cycle is approximately 50%.   |
| 1  | X       | Fast flash rate.<br>The flash rate is derived from the V pulse.<br>For 50 Hz systems Flash rate is approximately 2.0 Hz.<br>Duty cycle is approximately 50%.     |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |  |

18.4.6. Transparency of Boxes

For characters which are using subCLUT0 the transparency which is defined for the whole CLUT (see also Section 18.4.7.) can be overruled for foreground or background pixels. There are two different definitions for two box areas to define this overruling. Which of these two box transparencies is used, is selected char-

acter individual inside the bit BOX in CDW (character display word; see also Section 18.3.).

Transparency definition for characters for BOX0:

The cursor (see also Section 18.4.2.) is not affected by these bits.

Table 18–23:

| GLBT2_BOX0   | GLBT1_BOX0 | GLBT0_BOX0 | Description   |
|--|------------|------------|---|
| X  | 0          | 0          | Box transparency is disabled for BOX0.<br>For all pixels the global defined transparency of subCLUT0 is used.                                   |
| 0  | 0          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of ROM characters   |
| 0  | 1          | 0          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters  |
| 0  | 1          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of ROM characters<br>Foreground pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters |
| 1  | 0          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of ROM characters   |
| 1  | 1          | 0          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters  |
| 1  | 1          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX0 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of ROM characters<br>Background pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |            |            |   |

To decide the levels of COR and BLANK for BOX0 two global parameters are used:

**Table 18–24:**

| COR_BOX0   | BLA_BOX0 | Description  |
|--|----------|--|
| 0  | 0        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK are overruled by:<br>COR = 0; BLANK = 0 |
| 0  | 1        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK are overruled by:<br>COR = 0; BLANK = 1 |
| 1  | 0        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK are overruled by:<br>COR = 1; BLANK = 0 |
| 1  | 1        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK are overruled by:<br>COR = 1; BLANK = 1 |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |          |  |

For characters which are using subCLUT0 there are two types of transparency which can be defined. Which of these two box transparencies is used is defined character individual inside the bit BOX in CDW (character display word; see also Section 18.3.).

Transparency definition for characters for which BOX is set to 1 and which are using subCLUT0:

**Table 18–25:**

| GLBT2_BOX1   | GLBT1_BOX1 | GLBT0_BOX1 | Description   |
|--|------------|------------|---|
| X  | 0          | 0          | Box transparency is disabled for BOX1.  |
| 0  | 0          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of ROM characters   |
| 0  | 1          | 0          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters  |
| 0  | 1          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Foreground pixels of ROM characters<br>Foreground pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters |
| 1  | 0          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of ROM characters   |
| 1  | 1          | 0          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters  |
| 1  | 1          | 1          | Box transparency is enabled for BOX1 for following pixels:<br>Background pixels of ROM characters<br>Background pixels of 1-bit DRCS characters |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |            |            |   |

To decide the levels of COR and BLANK for BOX1 two global parameters are used:

Table 18–26:

| COR_BOX1   | BLA_BOX1 | Description  |
|--|----------|--|
| 0  | 0        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK for BOX1 are overruled by:<br>COR = 0; BLANK = 0                      |
| 0  | 1        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK coming from CLUT0 inside BOX1 are overruled by:<br>COR = 0; BLANK = 1 |
| 1  | 0        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK coming from CLUT0 inside BOX1 are overruled by:<br>COR = 1; BLANK = 0 |
| 1  | 1        | Box transparency levels of COR and BLANK coming from CLUT0 inside BOX1 are overruled by:<br>COR = 1; BLANK = 1 |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |          |  |

**18.4.7.CLUT**

The CLUT has a maximum width of 64 entries. The RGB values of the CLUT entries from 0-15 are hardwired and can not be changed by software. The trans-

parency for the hardwired CLUT values are set by a global attribute inside the global display word (GDW; see also Section 18.4.). This global setting can be overruled inside of boxes (see also Section 18.4.6.):

**Table 18–27:**

| HDWCLUTCOR | HDWCLUTBLANK | Description  |
|------------|--------------|--|
| 0          | 0            | Decides the polarity for COR and BLANK output for the hardwired CLUT entries 0-15 and the polarity of COR and BLANK during black clamp phase (see also Section 17.1.):<br><br>COR = 0<br>BLANK = 0 |
| 0          | 1            | Decides the polarity for COR and BLANK output for the hardwired CLUT entries 0-15 and the polarity of COR and BLANK during black clamp phase (see also Section 17.1.):<br><br>COR = 0<br>BLANK = 1 |
| 1          | 0            | Decides the polarity for COR and BLANK output for the hardwired CLUT entries 0-15 and the polarity of COR and BLANK during black clamp phase (see also Section 17.1.):<br><br>COR = 1<br>BLANK = 0 |
| 1          | 1            | Decides the polarity for COR and BLANK output for the hardwired CLUT entries 0-15 and the polarity of COR and BLANK during black clamp phase (see also Section 17.1.):<br><br>COR = 1<br>BLANK = 1 |

The RGB values of the CLUT entries from 16 to 63 are free programmable. The RGB values of the CLUT are organized in the TVTpro XRAM in a incremental serial order. CLUT locations inside XRAM which are not used for OSD can be used for any other storage purposes.

The CLUT is divided in 8 subCLUTs with 8 entries for 1-bit DRCS and ROM characters. For 2-bit DRCS characters the CLUT is divided in 8 subCLUTs with 4 entries. For 4-bit DRCS characters the CLUT is divided in 4 subCLUTs with 16 different entries.

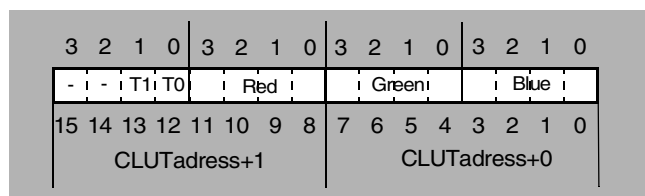
The subCLUTs can be selected for each character position individual. For this three bits CLUT2, CLUT1 and CLUT0 are reserved inside the character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.):

Table 18–28:

| CLUT2   | CLUT1 | CLUT0 | Meaning for ROM Character and 1-Bit/2-Bit DRCS Characters | Meaning for 4-Bit DRCS Characters |
|---|-------|-------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 0   | 0     | 0     | subCLUT0 is selected                                      | subCLUT0 is selected              |
| 0   | 0     | 1     | subCLUT1 is selected                                      | subCLUT1 is selected              |
| 0   | 1     | 0     | subCLUT2 is selected                                      | subCLUT2 is selected              |
| 0   | 1     | 1     | subCLUT3 is selected                                      | subCLUT3 is selected              |
| 1   | 0     | 0     | subCLUT4 is selected                                      | subCLUT0 is selected              |
| 1   | 0     | 1     | subCLUT5 is selected                                      | subCLUT1 is selected              |
| 1   | 1     | 0     | subCLUT6 is selected                                      | subCLUT2 is selected              |
| 1   | 1     | 1     | subCLUT7 is selected                                      | subCLUT3 is selected              |
| see also Section 18.3. / Character Display Word (CDW) |       |       |   |                                   |

CLUT entries from 0-15 are hardwired and can not be changed by the user.

Each of the 48 RAM programmable CLUT locations have a width of 2 byte. These 2 bytes are used to define a  $3 \times 4$ -bit RGB value plus the behavior of the BLANK and COR output pins. The following format is used:



### RGB/Transparency Memory Format of CLUT

- Bit 3 ... 0: 4-bit representation of Blue value
- Bit 7 ... 4: 4-bit representation of Green value
- Bit 11 ... 8: 4-bit representation of Red value
- Bit 12: Directly fed to BLANK pin
- Bit 13: Directly fed to COR pin
- Bit 14: Reserved
- Bit 15: Reserved

**Table 18–29: Organization of CLUT**

| RAM Address   | CLUT Entry | CLUT No for ROM, and 1-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for Cursor |       | CLUT No for 2-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for 4-Bit DRCS Character |       | Hardwired CLUT  |
|---------------|------------|---|-------|--------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|---|
|               |            | No.                                       | Entry | No.                | Entry | No.                              | Entry | No.                              | Entry |   |
|               | 0          | 0   | 0     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     | 0                                | 0     | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 1          |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 1     | R G B = 15 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 2          |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 2     | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 3          |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 3     | R G B = 15 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 4          |   | 4     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 4     | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 5          |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 5     | R G B = 15 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 6          |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 6     | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 7          |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 7     | R G B = 15 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> 15 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 8          | 1   | 0     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 8     | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 9          |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 9     | R G B = 07 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 10         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 10    | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 11         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 11    | R G B = 07 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 12         |   | 4     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 12    | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 13         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 13    | R G B = 07 <sub>d</sub> 00 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 14         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 14    | R G B = 00 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> |
| not available | 15         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 15    | R G B = 07 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> 07 <sub>d</sub> |

Table 18–29: Organization of CLUT, continued

| RAM Address                              | CLUT Entry | CLUT No for ROM, and 1-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for Cursor |       | CLUT No for 2-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for 4-Bit DRCS Character |       | Hardwired CLUT        |
|--|------------|---|-------|--------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
|  |            | No.                                       | Entry | No.                | Entry | No.                              | Entry | No.                              | Entry |                       |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 00 <sub>H</sub> | 16         | 2   | 0     | 0                  | 0     | 0                                | 0     | 1                                | 0     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 02 <sub>H</sub> | 17         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 1     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 04 <sub>H</sub> | 18         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 2     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 06 <sub>H</sub> | 19         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 3     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 08 <sub>H</sub> | 20         |   | 4     | 1                  | 0     | 1                                | 0     |                                  | 4     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 0A <sub>H</sub> | 21         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 5     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 0C <sub>H</sub> | 22         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 6     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 0E <sub>H</sub> | 23         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 7     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 10 <sub>H</sub> | 24         | 3   | 0     | 2                  | 0     | 2                                | 0     |                                  | 8     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 12 <sub>H</sub> | 25         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 9     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 14 <sub>H</sub> | 26         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 10    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 16 <sub>H</sub> | 27         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 11    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 18 <sub>H</sub> | 28         |   | 4     | 3                  | 0     | 3                                | 0     |                                  | 12    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 1A <sub>H</sub> | 29         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 13    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 1C <sub>H</sub> | 30         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 14    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 1E <sub>H</sub> | 31         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 15    | software programmable |



Table 18–29: Organization of CLUT, continued

| RAM Address                              | CLUT Entry | CLUT No for ROM, and 1-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for Cursor |       | CLUT No for 2-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for 4-Bit DRCS Character |       | Hardwired CLUT        |
|--|------------|---|-------|--------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
|  |            | No.                                       | Entry | No.                | Entry | No.                              | Entry | No.                              | Entry |                       |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 20 <sub>H</sub> | 32         | 4   | 0     | 4                  | 0     | 4                                | 0     | 2                                | 0     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 22 <sub>H</sub> | 33         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 1     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 24 <sub>H</sub> | 34         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 2     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 26 <sub>H</sub> | 35         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 3     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 28 <sub>H</sub> | 36         |   | 4     | 5                  | 0     | 5                                | 0     |                                  | 4     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 2A <sub>H</sub> | 37         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 5     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 2C <sub>H</sub> | 38         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 6     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 2E <sub>H</sub> | 39         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 7     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 30 <sub>H</sub> | 40         | 5   | 0     | 6                  | 0     | 6                                | 0     |                                  | 8     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 32 <sub>H</sub> | 41         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 9     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 34 <sub>H</sub> | 42         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 10    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 36 <sub>H</sub> | 43         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 11    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 38 <sub>H</sub> | 44         |   | 4     | 7                  | 0     | 7                                | 0     |                                  | 12    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 3A <sub>H</sub> | 45         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 13    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 3C <sub>H</sub> | 46         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 14    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 3E <sub>H</sub> | 47         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 15    | software programmable |

Table 18–29: Organization of CLUT, continued

| RAM Address                              | CLUT Entry | CLUT No for ROM, and 1-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for Cursor |       | CLUT No for 2-Bit DRCS Character |       | CLUT No for 4-Bit DRCS Character |       | Hardwired CLUT        |
|--|------------|---|-------|--------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
|  |            | No.                                       | Entry | No.                | Entry | No.                              | Entry | No.                              | Entry |                       |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 40 <sub>H</sub> | 48         | 6   | 0     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     | 3                                | 0     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 42 <sub>H</sub> | 49         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 1     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 44 <sub>H</sub> | 50         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 2     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 46 <sub>H</sub> | 51         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 3     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 48 <sub>H</sub> | 52         |   | 4     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 4     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 4A <sub>H</sub> | 53         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 5     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 4C <sub>H</sub> | 54         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 6     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 4E <sub>H</sub> | 55         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 7     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 50 <sub>H</sub> | 56         | 7   | 0     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 8     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 52 <sub>H</sub> | 57         |   | 1     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 9     | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 54 <sub>H</sub> | 58         |   | 2     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 10    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 56 <sub>H</sub> | 59         |   | 3     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 11    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 58 <sub>H</sub> | 60         |   | 4     | not available      | 0     | not available                    | 0     |                                  | 12    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 5A <sub>H</sub> | 61         |   | 5     |                    | 1     |                                  | 1     |                                  | 13    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 5C <sub>H</sub> | 62         |   | 6     |                    | 2     |                                  | 2     |                                  | 14    | software programmable |
| CLUTPOINT <sub>H</sub> + 5E <sub>H</sub> | 63         |   | 7     |                    | 3     |                                  | 3     |                                  | 15    | software programmable |

**18.4.7.1.CLUT Access for ROM Characters/1-bit DRCS Characters**

For each pixel of a character a 1-bit background/foreground information is available. 1 out of 8 sub CLUTs can be selected by character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.). 1 out of 8 color vectors can be selected as a foreground and background color vector by the character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.). Please notice Table 18–29.

**18.4.7.2.CLUT Access for 2-Bit DRCS Characters**

2-bit DRCS characters are stored in the RAM. Within a 2-bit DRCS character a 2-bit color vector information is available for each pixel. By this 2-bit information 1 out of 4 color vectors is selected from a subCLUT.

1 out of 8 subCLUTs is selected by character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.). Please notice Table 18–29.

**18.4.7.3.CLUT Access for 4-Bit DRCS Characters**

4-bit DRCS characters are stored in the RAM. Within a 4-bit DRCS character a 4-bit color vector information is available for each pixel. By this 1 out of 16 color vectors is selected from a subCLUT.

1 out of 4 subCLUTs are selected by character display word (CDW; see also Section 18.3.). Please notice Table 18–29.

**18.4.8.Character Resolution**

The character matrix of DRCS characters can be adjusted in vertical direction from 9 lines up to 16 lines. In horizontal direction the character matrix is fixed to 12 pixels:

**Table 18–30:**

| CHADRC2  | CHADRC1 | CHADRC0 | Description |
|--|---------|---------|-------------|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 9 lines     |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 10 lines    |
| 0  | 1       | 0       | 11 lines    |
| 0  | 1       | 1       | 12 lines    |
| 1  | 0       | 0       | 13 lines    |
| 1  | 0       | 1       | 14 lines    |
| 1  | 1       | 0       | 15 lines    |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 16 lines    |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |             |

The character matrix of the ROM characters can also be adjusted in vertical direction from 9 lines up to 16

lines. In horizontal direction the ROM character matrix is fixed to 12 pixels:

Table 18–31:

| CHAROM2  | CHAROM1 | CHAROM0 | Description |
|--|---------|---------|-------------|
| 0  | 0       | 0       | 9 lines     |
| 0  | 0       | 1       | 10 lines    |
| 0  | 1       | 0       | 11 lines    |
| 0  | 1       | 1       | 12 lines    |
| 1  | 0       | 0       | 13 lines    |
| 1  | 0       | 1       | 14 lines    |
| 1  | 1       | 0       | 15 lines    |
| 1  | 1       | 1       | 16 lines    |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |         |         |             |

The parameter CHAROM is used to characterize the organization of ROM characters. The parameter CHADRC is used to characterize the organization of DRCS characters and the vertical count of lines for a character row on output side. If the count of lines of ROM characters is smaller than the count of DRCS characters the lines of ROM characters are filled up with background colored pixels.

**18.4.9.Shadowing**  
If shadowing is enabled the ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters of the characters are displayed by west shadow or east shadow. The color vector of the shadow is defined by software. The shadow color vector has a width of 6 bit.  
The shadow feature is enabled by the bit SHEN:

Table 18–32:

| SHEN   | Description  |
|--|--|
| 0  | Shadow disabled.                                     |
| 1  | Shadow for ROM characters and 1-bit DRCS characters. |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |  |

There are two options for shadowing:

**Table 18–33:**

| SHEAWE   | Description     |
|--|-----------------|
| 0  | East shadowing. |
| 1  | West shadowing. |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |                 |

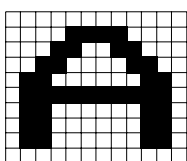
CLUT entries from 0-63 can be used as a shadow color vector:

**Table 18–34:**

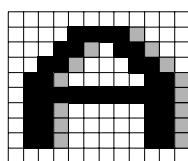
| SHCOL5   | SHCOL4 | SHCOL3 | SHCOL2 | SHCOL1 | SHCOL0 | Description  |
|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|
| 0  | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | Defines a color vector for shadowing<br><br>see also Section 18.4.7. |
| 0  | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      |  |
| ...  |        |        |        |        |        |  |
| 1  | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      |  |
| 1  | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      |  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |        |        |        |        |        |  |

Example for a “A” displayed in shadow mode:

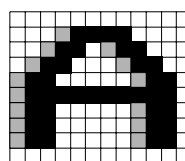
no shadow:



east shadow:



west shadow:



- shadowed pixel
- background pixel
- foreground pixel

**Fig. 18–2:** Processing of Shadowing

Within one character matrix shadowing is only processed for the pixels which are belonging to that character matrix. Pixels of one character matrix can not generate a shadow inside a neighbored character matrix.

18.4.10.Progressive Scan

This feature is useful for TV-devices in which a frame consists of 1 field with 625 lines instead of 2 fields with 312.5 lines each.

For this TV-fields on RGB-output lines are be repeated twice by enabling the progressive scan feature. This repetition of lines in vertical direction is only processed for lines inside the character display area.

Table 18–35:

| Progress   | Description                           |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 0  | Progressive scan support is disabled. |
| 1  | Progressive scan support is enabled.  |
| see also Section 18.4. / Global Display Word (GDW) |                                       |

18.5.DRCS Characters

DRCS characters are available in the XRAM. There are three different DRCS color resolution formats available:

- 1-bit per pixel DRCS characters
- 2-bit per pixel DRCS characters
- 4-bit per pixel DRCS characters

In which way this 1-bit, 2-bit or 4-bit color vector information is used to access the CLUT, see Section 18.4.7..

18.5.1.Memory Organization of DRCS Characters

The following examples are proceeded on the assumption that a height of 11 character lines is selected. The memory organization behaves the same for any other count of lines.

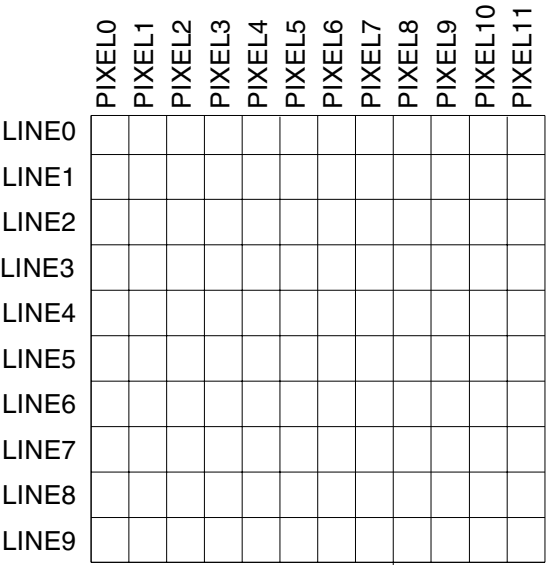


Fig. 18–3: Allocation of Pixels Inside the Character Matrix

Each character starts at a new byte address. This causes, that for odd heights nibbles may be left free.

**Table 18–36: 1-Bit DRCS Characters**

| Char        | Address                                     | Bit7    | Bit6    | Bit5     | Bit4     | Bit3      | Bit2    | Bit1     | Bit0     |
|-------------|---|---------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|---------|----------|----------|
| Character 1 | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 00 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1    | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0    | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 4   | PIXEL 5 | PIXEL 6  | PIXEL 7  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    | BIT 0     | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    |
|             | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 01 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1    | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 1    | LINE 1  | LINE 1   | LINE 1   |
|             |   | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 0   | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    | BIT 0     | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    |
|             | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 02 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1    | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 1  | LINE 1  | LINE 1   | LINE 1   | LINE 1    | LINE 1  | LINE 1   | LINE 1   |
|             |   | PIXEL 4 | PIXEL 5 | PIXEL 6  | PIXEL 7  | PIXEL 8   | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    | BIT 0     | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    |
|             | ...   | ...     |         |          |          |           |         |          |          |
|             | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 10 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | left free |         |          |          |
|             |   | LINE 10 | LINE 10 | LINE 10  | LINE 10  |           |         |          |          |
|             |   | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 |           |         |          |          |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    |           |         |          |          |
| Character 2 | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 11 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2    | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0    | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 4   | PIXEL 5 | PIXEL 6  | PIXEL 7  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    | BIT 0     | BIT 0   | BIT 0    | BIT 0    |
| ...         | ...   | ...     |         |          |          |           |         |          |          |

**Table 18–37:** 2-Bit DRCS Characters

| Char        | Address                                     | Bit7    | Bit6    | Bit5    | Bit4    | Bit3     | Bit2     | Bit1     | Bit0     |
|-------------|---|---------|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Character 1 | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 00 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 3  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    |
|             | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 01 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 4 | PIXEL 4 | PIXEL 5 | PIXEL 5 | PIXEL 6  | PIXEL 6  | PIXEL 7  | PIXEL 7  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    |
|             | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 02 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 11 |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    |
|             | ...   | ...     |         |         |         |          |          |          |          |
|             | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 20 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1  | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 10 | LINE 10 | LINE 10 | LINE 10 | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  |
|             |   | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 8 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 9 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 11 |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    |
| Character 2 | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 21 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2  | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   |
|             |   | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0  | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 0 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 1 | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 3  |
|             |   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0   | BIT 1   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    |
| ...         | ...   | ...     |         |         |         |          |          |          |          |



**Table 18–38:** 4-Bit DRCS Characters

| Char        | Address                                     | Bit7     | Bit6     | Bit5     | Bit4     | Bit3     | Bit2     | Bit1     | Bit0     |
|-------------|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Character 1 | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 00 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  |
|             |   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    |
|             | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 01 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 2  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 3  | PIXEL 3  |
|             |   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    |
|             | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 02 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 4  | PIXEL 4  | PIXEL 4  | PIXEL 4  | PIXEL 5  | PIXEL 5  | PIXEL 5  | PIXEL 5  |
|             |   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    |
|             | ...   | ...      |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|             | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 41 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   | CHAR 1   |
|             |   | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  | LINE 10  |
|             |   | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 10 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 11 | PIXEL 11 |
|             |   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    |
| Character 2 | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub><br>+ 42 <sub>H</sub> | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   | CHAR 2   |
|             |   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   | LINE 0   |
|             |   | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 0  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  | PIXEL 1  |
|             |   | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    | BIT 0    | BIT 1    | BIT 2    | BIT 3    |
| ...         | ...   | ...      |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |

18.6.Memory Organization

The memory organization concept of the OSD is based on a flexible pointer concept. All display memory registers reside in the internal XRAM only.

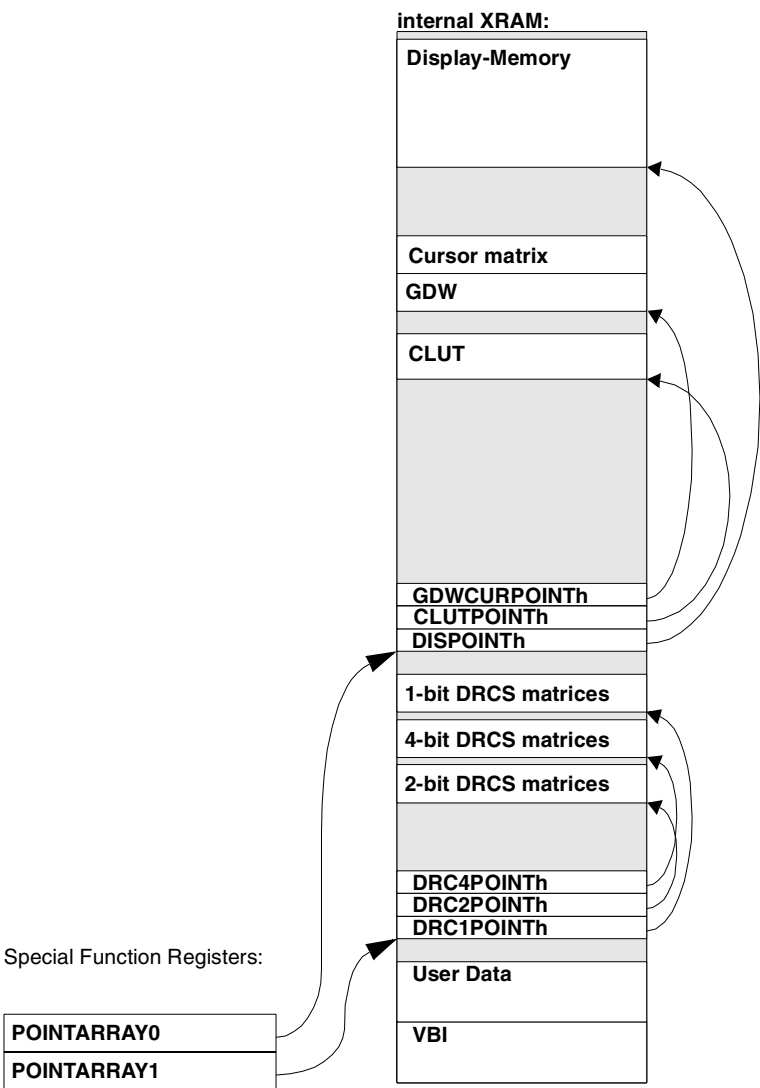


Fig. 18–4: Memory Organization of On Screen Display

There are 4 bytes of SFR registers which are pointing to two pointer arrays inside the XRAM:

Table 18–39:

| SFR Address                       | Name        | Function                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| XX <sub>H</sub>                   | POINTARRAY0 | Pointer to pointer array 0 |
| XX <sub>H</sub> + 02 <sub>H</sub> | POINTARRAY1 | Pointer to pointer array 1 |

These 2 SFR pointers are used to point to  $2 \times 3$  other pointers. These 6 pointers are pointing to the start address of the following memory areas:

- Start address of character display area memory
- Start address of CLUT
- Start address of 1-bit DRCS characters matrixes
- Start address of 2-bit DRCS characters matrixes
- Start address of 4-bit DRCS characters matrixes
- Start address of global display word / cursor matrix

User has to take care for a pointer definition so that memory areas do not overlap each other on the one hand and that the definition is optimized in a way, so that no memory is wasted on the other hand. The length of the global display word is fixed to 10 byte and the length of the CLUT is fixed to  $2 \times 48$  byte. The length of all the other areas depend on the OSD requirements (see also Section 18.6.1. to Section 18.6.4.).

Each of the six pointers to the memory areas is stored in an array of pointers. Each pointer in this array has got a width of 16 bits and uses 2 bytes inside the RAM:

**Table 18–40:**

| Pointer Array | Start address in Array                           | Name                     | Function                         |
|---------------|--|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| POINTFIELD0   | 0 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>1 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | DISPOINT <sub>H</sub>    | Pointer to display memory        |
|               | 2 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>3 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | CLUTPOINT                | Pointer to CLUT                  |
|               | 4 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>5 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | GDWCURPOINT <sub>H</sub> | Pointer to GDW and cursor matrix |
| POINTFIELD1   | 0 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>1 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | DRC1POINT <sub>H</sub>   | Pointer 1-bit DRCS matrices      |
|               | 2 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>3 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | DRC2POINT <sub>H</sub>   | Pointer 2-bit DRCS matrices      |
|               | 4 <sub>H</sub> (LByte)<br>5 <sub>H</sub> (HByte) | DRC4POINT <sub>H</sub>   | Pointer 4-bit DRCS matrices      |

### 18.6.1.Character Display Area

The character display area consists of 3 bytes for each character position of the character display area. These three bytes are used to store the character display word as it is described in Section 18.3..

The array is sorted in a incremental serial order coming from the top left character throughout the bottom right character of the character display area. For further information see Section 18.2..

The length of this display memory area depends on the parameter settings of DISALH0 ... DISALH4.

## 18.6.2.CLUT Area

The CLUT area consist of  $48 \times 2$  Byte CLUT contents. The CLUT contents are stored in a serial incremental order.

For further information see Section 18.4.7..

The length of the CLUT is fixed to 96 bytes.

## 18.6.3.Global Display Word/Cursor

The area of the global display word is fixed to 10 byte. All the global display relevant informations are stored inside global display word (GDW; see also Section 18.4.). See also Section 18.2.. The cursor matrix for cursor display is stored after the global display word.

The length of the memory area of global display word is fixed to 10 byte. The length of the memory area of cursor matrix depends on the settings of CHADRC2 ... CHADRC0.

### 18.6.4.1-Bit/2-Bit/4-Bit DRCS Character

In this area the pixel information of the dynamically reconfigurable characters is stored. For further information on the memory format refer to Section 18.5..

The length of these areas depends on the settings of DRCSB1\_3 ... DRCSB1\_0 and the settings of DRCSB2\_3 ... DRCSB2\_0.

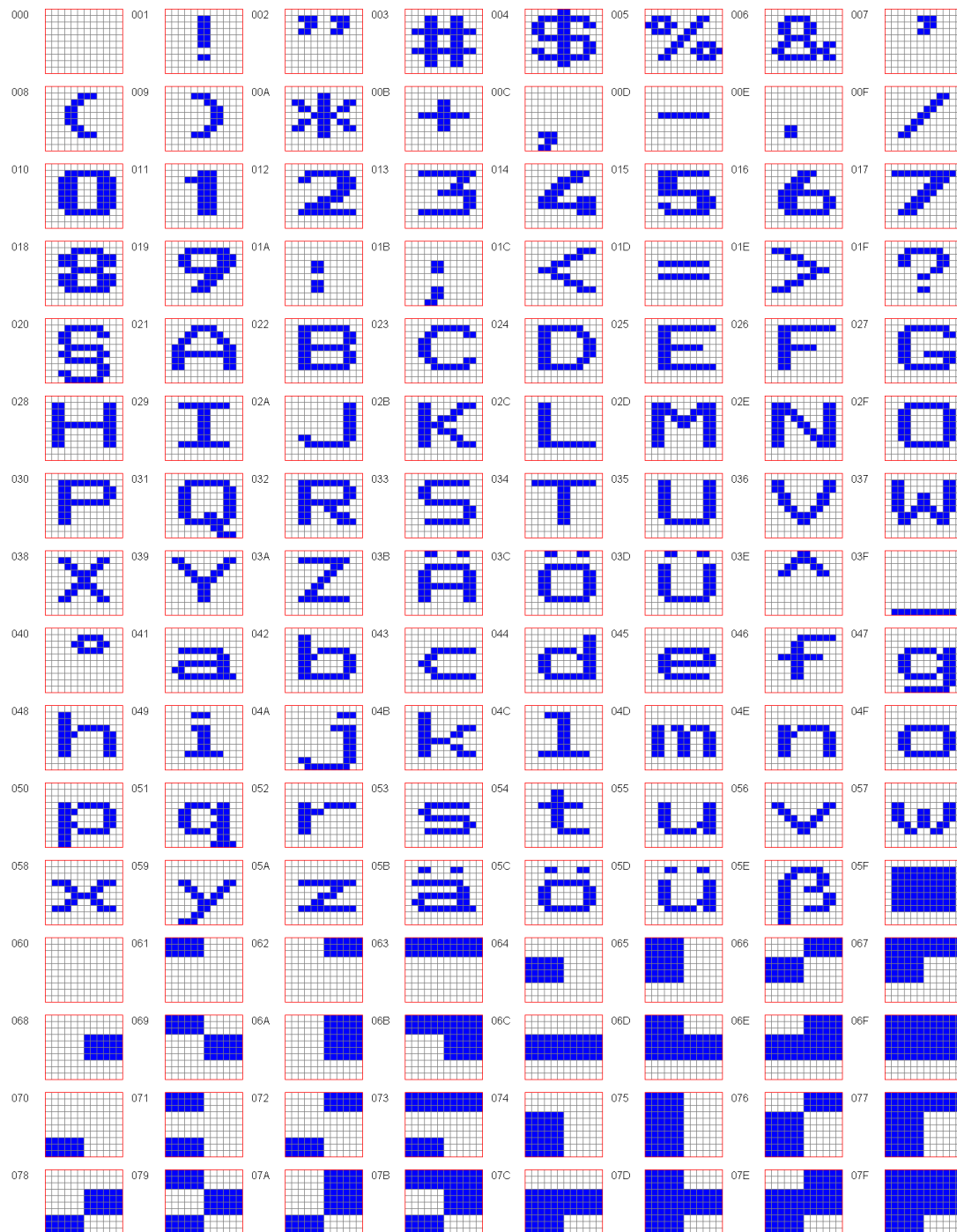
## 18.6.5.Overview on the SFR Registers

Other than the settings in the XRAM, SFR registers are used for OSD control.

Table 18–41:

| SFR Address     | Name              | Bit Programmable | Width | Purpose   |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|-------|---|
| F8 <sub>H</sub> | EN_LD_GDW         | yes              | 1 bit | Used to avoid the download of the parameter settings of the GDW from the RAM to the local display generator register bank. See also Section 18.4.2.:<br><br>0: Download disabled.<br>1: Download enabled.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |
| F8 <sub>H</sub> | EN_DG_OUT         | yes              | 1 bit | Used to disable/enable the output of the display generator.<br><br>If display generator is disabled the RGB outputs of the IC are set to black and the outputs BLANK and COR are set to.<br><br>COR = ENABLECOR<br>BLANK = ENABLEBLA<br><br>If display generator is enabled the display information RGB, COR and BLANK is generated according to the parameter settings in the XRAM.<br><br>0: Display generator is disabled.<br>1: Display generator is enabled.<br><br>Initial value: 0 |
| F8 <sub>H</sub> | DIS_COR           | no               | 1 bit | Defines the level of the COR output if display generator is disabled.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |
| F8 <sub>H</sub> | DIS_BLA           | no               | 1 bit | Defines the level of the BLANK output if display generator is disabled.<br><br>Initial value: 1   |
| F3 <sub>H</sub> | POINTARRAY<br>1_1 | no               | 6 bit | Defines a pointer to a pointer array.<br>See also Section 18.6.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |
| F4 <sub>H</sub> | POINTARRAY<br>1_0 | no               | 8 bit | Defines a pointer to a pointer array.<br>See also Section 18.6.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |
| F5 <sub>H</sub> | POINTARRAY<br>0_1 | no               | 6 bit | Defines a pointer to a pointer array.<br>See also Section 18.6.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |
| F6 <sub>H</sub> | POINTARRAY<br>0_0 | no               | 8 bit | Defines a pointer to a pointer array.<br>See also Section 18.6.<br><br>Initial value: 0   |

## 18.7.TVText Pro Characters



**Fig. 18–5:**

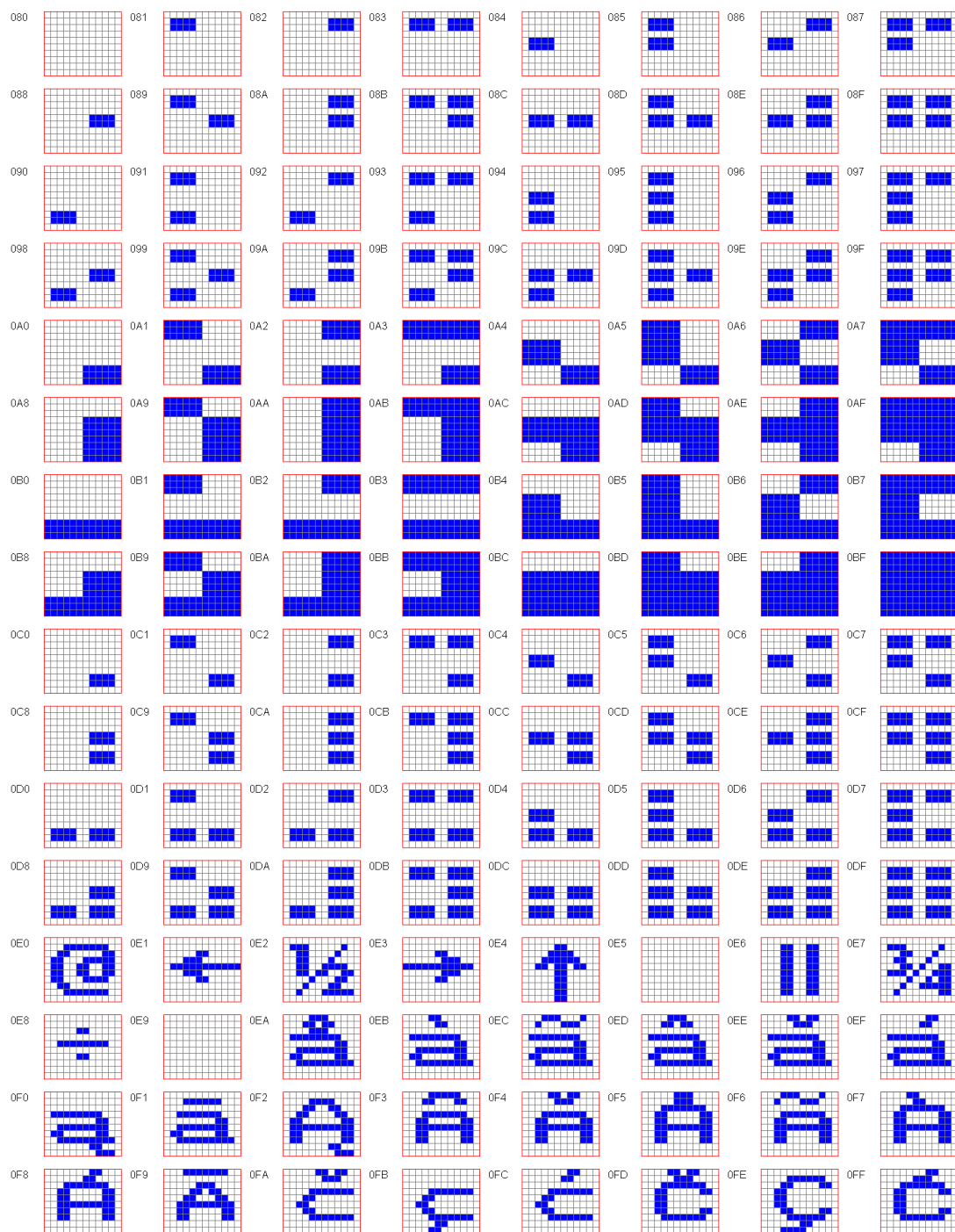


Fig. 18–6:







Fig. 18–8:



**Fig. 18–9:**

## 19. D/A Converter

TVTpro uses a  $3 \times 2$ -bit voltage D/A converter to generate analog RGB output signals with a nominal amplitude of 0.7 V (also available: 0.5 V, 1.0 V and 1.2 V) peak-to-peak.

### 19.1. Register Description

| Default after reset: A0 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |        |        |       | SCR1  |       | SFR-Address E1 <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |       |
|---|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| reserved                                      | RGB_G1 | RGB_G0 | CORBL | VSU_3 | VSU_2 | VSU_1                                | VSU_0 |

**reserved:** **Reserved for internal use.**  
Should always be set to 1<sup>1)</sup>.

**RGB\_G(1..0):** **Gain Adjustment of RGB Converter.**  
The user can change the output gain of the DAC.

|     |                 |
|-----|-----------------|
| 00: | 0.5 V           |
| 01: | 0.7 V (default) |
| 10: | 1.0 V           |
| 11: | 1.2 V           |

**VSU\_3..0:** Refer to Section 17.

1) BW\_control

| Default after reset: 00 <sub>H</sub><br>(MSB) |    |    | PSAVE bit addressable |       |         | SFR-Address D8 <sub>H</sub><br>(LSB) |      |
|---|----|----|-----------------------|-------|---------|--------------------------------------|------|
| --  | -- | -- | CADC                  | WAKUP | SLI_ACQ | DISP                                 | PERI |

-- Not used.

**CADC** Refer to Section 8.

**WAKUP** Refer to Section 8.

**SLI\_ACQ** Refer to Section 8.

**DISP** Display unit

0: Power save Mode not started.  
1: Power save Mode started.

In Power save mode display generator, pixel clock unit, display sync unit, sandcastle decoder and COR\_BLA are disabled. All the pending bus request are masked off.

DAC is also switched off and it outputs the values defined for DAC off. COR\_BLA output their reset value.

**PERI** Refer to Section 8.

|                               |     |      |    |             |     |                             |      |
|-------------------------------|-----|------|----|-------------|-----|-----------------------------|------|
| Default after reset: 000xxx00 |     |      |    | <b>PCON</b> |     | SFR-Address 87 <sub>H</sub> |      |
| (MSB)                         |     |      |    |             |     | (LSB)                       |      |
| SMOD                          | PDS | IDLS | SD | GF1         | GF0 | PDE                         | IDLE |

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>SMOD</b> | Refer to Section 11.  |
| <b>PDS</b>  | Power Down Start Bit<br>0: Power Down Mode not started.<br>1: Power Down Mode started.<br>The DAC is switched off during Power Down Mode. |
| <b>IDLS</b> | Idle Start Bit<br>0: Idle Mode not started.<br>1: Idle Mode started.<br>The DAC is switched off during Idle Mode.                         |
| <b>SD</b>   | Slow Down Bit<br>0: Slow down mode is disabled.<br>1: Slow down mode is enabled.<br>The DAC is switched off during Slow Down Mode.        |
| <b>GF1</b>  | Refer to Section 8.   |
| <b>GF0</b>  | Refer to Section 8.   |
| <b>PDE</b>  | Refer to Section 8.   |
| <b>IDLE</b> | Refer to Section 8.   |

## 20. Electrical Characteristics

### 20.1. Absolute Maximum Ratings

The maximum ratings may not be exceeded under any circumstances, not even momentarily and individually, as permanent damage to the IC will result.

| Parameter             | Symbol                | Limit Values |      | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|------|------|-----------------|
|                       |                       | min.         | max. |      |                 |
| Supply voltage 3.3 V  | VDD33 <sub>1..7</sub> | –            | 4.0  | V    | –               |
| Supply voltage 2.5 V  | VDD25 <sub>1..2</sub> | –            | 3.0  | V    | –               |
| Analog supply voltage | VDDA <sub>1..4</sub>  | –            | 3.0  | V    | –               |
| Storage temperature   | T <sub>stg</sub>      | -20          | 125  | °C   | –               |

### 20.2. Operating Range

| Parameter               | Symbol                | Limit Values |      | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|------|------|-----------------|
|                         |                       | min.         | max. |      |                 |
| Ambient temperature     | T <sub>A</sub>        | 0            | 70   | °C   | –               |
| Supply voltage 3.3 V    | VDD33 <sub>1..7</sub> | 3.0          | 3.6  | V    | –               |
| Supply voltage 2.5 V    | VDD25 <sub>1..2</sub> | 2.25         | 2.75 | V    | –               |
| Analog supply voltage   | VDDA <sub>1..4</sub>  | 2.25         | 2.75 | V    | –               |
| Total Power Consumption | P <sub>total</sub>    | –            | 0.6  | W    | –               |

**Note:** In the operating range, the functions given in the circuit description are fulfilled.

## 20.3.DC Characteristics

| Parameter  | Symbol            | Limit Values  |               | Unit | Test Conditions   |
|--|-------------------|---------------|---------------|------|---|
|  |                   | min.          | max.          |      |   |
| Supply Currents  |                   |               |               |      |   |
| Digital supply current for 3.3 V domain                                  | I <sub>3.3V</sub> | 0             | 1             | mA   | Digital pins and BLANK/COR left open                                  |
| Digital supply current for 2.5 V domain                                  | I <sub>2.5V</sub> | 0             | 30            | mA   | Min: Power down mode<br>Max: Worst case                               |
| Analog Power Supply Current  | I <sub>ANA</sub>  | 0.2           | 65            | mA   | Min: Power down mode<br>Max: ADC (20 mA), DAC/ PLL (45 mA) worse case |
| Idle mode supply current (with A/D wake up, RTC and External Interrupts) | I <sub>IDLE</sub> | 5             | 10            | mA   | Max: Digital core (7 mA in idle mode, PLL (1.5 mA), ADC (1.5 mA)      |
| Power Down mode supply current   | I <sub>PD</sub>   | 0             | 1             | mA   | Max: 1 mA ADC supply current  |
| Slow Down mode supply current  | I <sub>SD</sub>   | 4             | 8             | mA   | Max: Digital (5 mA), PLL (1.5 mA), ADC (1.5 mA)                       |
| PLL sleep mode   | –                 | –             | < 4           | mA   | Digital (< 2 mA), DAC/PLL (< 1 mA), ADC (< 1 mA)                      |
| I/O Voltages (valid for any pin unless otherwise stated)                 |                   |               |               |      |   |
| Input low Voltage  | V <sub>IL</sub>   | -0.4          | 0.8           | V    | –   |
| Input high Voltage   | V <sub>IH</sub>   | 2.0           | 3.6           | V    | –   |
| Output low Voltage   | V <sub>OL</sub>   | –             | 0.4           | V    | @ I <sub>out</sub> = 3.2 mA   |
| Output high Voltage  | V <sub>OH</sub>   | 2.4           | –             | V    | @ I <sub>out</sub> = -1.6 mA during low-high transition               |
| Leakage Current  | I <sub>L</sub>    | -1            | 10            | μA   | Pins without pull-up, input mode (Port 0, ENE, STOP, VSync)           |
| Pull-up low Current  | I <sub>IL</sub>   | -250          | -50           | μA   | @ V <sub>ILmax</sub> = 0.8 V  |
| Pull-up high Current   | I <sub>IH</sub>   | -170          | -25           | μA   | @ V <sub>IHmin</sub> = 2.0 V  |
| Crystal Oscillator: XIN, XOUT  |                   |               |               |      |   |
| Quartz crystal oscillator frequency                                      | C <sub>FB</sub>   | 6.0 - 100 ppm | 6.0 + 100 ppm | MHz  | –   |

| Parameter                                    | Symbol              | Limit Values |       | Unit | Test Conditions                          |
|--|---------------------|--------------|-------|------|--|
|  |                     | min.         | max.  |      |  |
| CVBS-Input: CVBS                             |                     |              |       |      |  |
| Pin capacitance                              | C <sub>P</sub>      | –            | –     | pF   | –  |
| Input impedance                              | Z <sub>P</sub>      | –            | –     | 1/MΩ | –  |
| Ext. coupling capacitance                    | C <sub>CPL1</sub>   | 10           | 100   | nF   | –  |
| Source impedance                             | R <sub>Z</sub>      | –            | < 500 | Ω    | –  |
| Overall CVBS amplitude                       | V <sub>CVBS</sub>   | 0.75         | 1.3   | V    | –  |
| CVBS sync amplitude                          | V <sub>SYNC</sub>   | 0.18         | 0.6   | V    | –  |
| TXT data amplitude                           | V <sub>DATA</sub>   | 0.3          | 0.7   | V    | –  |
| RGB-Outputs                                  |                     |              |       |      |  |
| Load capacitance                             | C <sub>P</sub>      | –            | 20    | pF   | –  |
| Output voltage swing                         | V <sub>outpp</sub>  | 0.5          | 1.2   | V    | available:<br>0.5 V; 0.7 V; 1.0 V; 1.2 V |
| RGB offset                                   | U <sub>offset</sub> | 175          | 375   | mV   | –  |
| Rise/Fall Times                              | T <sub>RF</sub>     | –            | 12.5  | ns   | –  |
| Load Resistance                              | R <sub>I</sub>      | 10           | –     | kΩ   | –  |
| Diff. non-linearity                          | –                   | -0.5         | 0.5   | LSB  | –  |
| Int. non-linearity                           | –                   | -0.5         | 0.5   | LSB  | –  |
| RGB Channel Matching                         | –                   | –            | 3     | %    | 1.2 V output voltage swing               |
| Skew to COR, Blank                           | T <sub>skew</sub>   | -5           | 5     | ns   | –  |
| Jitter to Horizontal Sync Reference          | T <sub>Jit</sub>    | –            | 4     | ns   | –  |
| Address Bits: A0 to A15, ALE, PSEN, RD, WR   |                     |              |       |      |  |
| Output Rise Time                             | T <sub>r</sub>      | –            | 15    | ns   | (10% - 90%)                              |
| Output Fall Time                             | T <sub>f</sub>      | –            | 15    | ns   | (10% - 90%)                              |
| Load Capacitance                             | C <sub>L</sub>      | –            | 50    | pF   | –  |
| P4.(0 ... 4) Alternate Address Control Lines |                     |              |       |      |  |
| Output Rise Time                             | T <sub>r</sub>      | –            | 15    | ns   | (10% - 90%)                              |
| Output Fall Time                             | T <sub>f</sub>      | –            | 15    | ns   | (10% - 90%)                              |
| Load Capacitance                             | C <sub>L</sub>      | –            | 50    | pF   | –  |
| Pin capacitance                              | C <sub>I</sub>      | –            | 10    | pF   | –  |

| Parameter   | Symbol             | Limit Values      |                    | Unit | Test Conditions  |
|---|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------|--|
|   |                    | min.              | max.               |      |  |
| Data Bits: D0 to D7   |                    |                   |                    |      |  |
| Output Rise Time  | T <sub>r</sub>     | –                 | 15                 | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Output Fall Time  | T <sub>f</sub>     | –                 | 15                 | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Pin capacitance   | C <sub>I</sub>     | –                 | 10                 | pF   | –  |
| Load Capacitance  | C <sub>L</sub>     | –                 | 50                 | pF   | –  |
| BLANK/CORBLA (Control bit CORBL = 0; BLANK only)            |                    |                   |                    |      |  |
| Output Rise Time  | T <sub>r</sub>     | 8                 | 15                 | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Output Fall Time  | T <sub>f</sub>     | 8                 | 15                 | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Output voltage no data insertion (Video)                    | V <sub>i-n</sub>   | 0                 | 0.4                | V    | –  |
| Output voltage for data insertion                           | V <sub>i-y</sub>   | 2.4               | V <sub>dd3.3</sub> | V    | –  |
| Load Capacitance  | C <sub>L</sub>     | –                 | 50                 | pF   | –  |
| BLANK/CORBLA (Control bit CORBL = 1; BLANK and COR)         |                    |                   |                    |      |  |
| Output Rise Time  | T <sub>r</sub>     | –                 | 12.5               | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Output Fall Time  | T <sub>f</sub>     | –                 | 12.5               | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Output voltage no data insertion no contrast reduction      | V <sub>ic-n</sub>  | 0                 | 0.4                | V    | –  |
| Output voltage for contrast reduction and no data insertion | V <sub>c-y</sub>   | V <sub>mmin</sub> | V <sub>mmax</sub>  | V    | V <sub>mmin</sub> = 1/3 × V <sub>dd3.3</sub> - 150 mV<br>V <sub>mmin</sub> = 1/3 × V <sub>dd3.3</sub> + 150 mV |
| Output voltage for data insertion                           | V <sub>i-y</sub>   | 2.4               | V <sub>dd3.3</sub> | V    | –  |
| Load Capacitance  | C <sub>L</sub>     | –                 | 20                 | pF   | pure capacitive load   |
| HSYNC (Slave Mode)  |                    |                   |                    |      |  |
| Input Rise Time   | T <sub>r</sub>     | –                 | 100                | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Input Fall Time   | T <sub>f</sub>     | –                 | 100                | ns   | (10% - 90%)  |
| Input Hysteresis 1  | V <sub>HYST1</sub> | 200               | 450                | mV   | Hys 1 selected by software   |
| Input Hysteresis 2  | V <sub>HYST2</sub> | 25                | 275                | mV   | Hys 2 selected by software   |
| Input Pulse Width   | T <sub>IPWH</sub>  | 100               | –                  | ns   | –  |
| Pin capacitance   | C <sub>I</sub>     | –                 | 10                 | pF   | –  |
| Leakage current   | I <sub>I</sub>     | -1                | 1                  | μA   | –  |
| Input low Voltage   | V <sub>IL</sub>    | -0.4              | 0.8                | V    | –  |
| Input high Voltage  | V <sub>IH</sub>    | 2.0               | 2.6                | V    | –  |

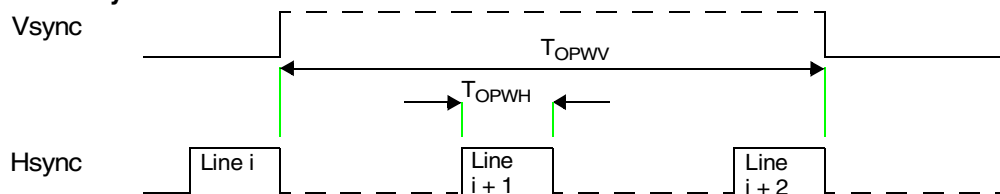


| Parameter                            | Symbol             | Limit Values |      | Unit | Test Conditions         |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|------|------|-------------------------|
|                                      |                    | min.         | max. |      |                         |
| VSYNC                                |                    |              |      |      |                         |
| Input Rise Time                      | T <sub>r</sub>     | —            | 200  | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Input Fall Time                      | T <sub>f</sub>     | —            | 200  | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Input Pulse Width                    | T <sub>IPWV</sub>  | 2/fh         | —    | —    | —                       |
| Output Rise Time                     | T <sub>r</sub>     | —            | 15   | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Output Fall Time                     | T <sub>f</sub>     | —            | 15   | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Load Capacitance                     | C <sub>L</sub>     | —            | 50   | pF   | —                       |
| Pin capacitance                      | C <sub>I</sub>     | —            | 10   | pF   | —                       |
| Input low Voltage                    | V <sub>IL</sub>    | -0.4         | 0.8  | V    | —                       |
| Input high Voltage                   | V <sub>IH</sub>    | 2.0          | 3.6  | V    | —                       |
| Typical VCS Timing (Master mode)     |                    |              |      |      |                         |
| Pulse width of H-Sync                | T <sub>HPVCS</sub> | 4.59         |      | μs   | —                       |
| Distance between Equalizing Impulses | T <sub>DEP</sub>   | 31.98        |      | μs   | —                       |
| Pulse Width of Equalizing Impulses   | T <sub>EP</sub>    | 2.31         |      | μs   | —                       |
| Pulse Width of Field Sync Impulses   | T <sub>FSP</sub>   | 27.39        |      | μs   | —                       |
| Horizontal Period                    | T <sub>HPR</sub>   | —            |      | μs   | Depends on Register HPR |
| P1.x, P3.x, P4.x                     |                    |              |      |      |                         |
| Output Rise Time                     | T <sub>r</sub>     | —            | 15   | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Output Fall Time                     | T <sub>f</sub>     | —            | 15   | ns   | (10% - 90%)             |
| Load Capacitance                     | C <sub>L</sub>     | —            | 50   | pF   | —                       |
| Pin capacitance                      | C <sub>I</sub>     | —            | 10   | pF   | —                       |

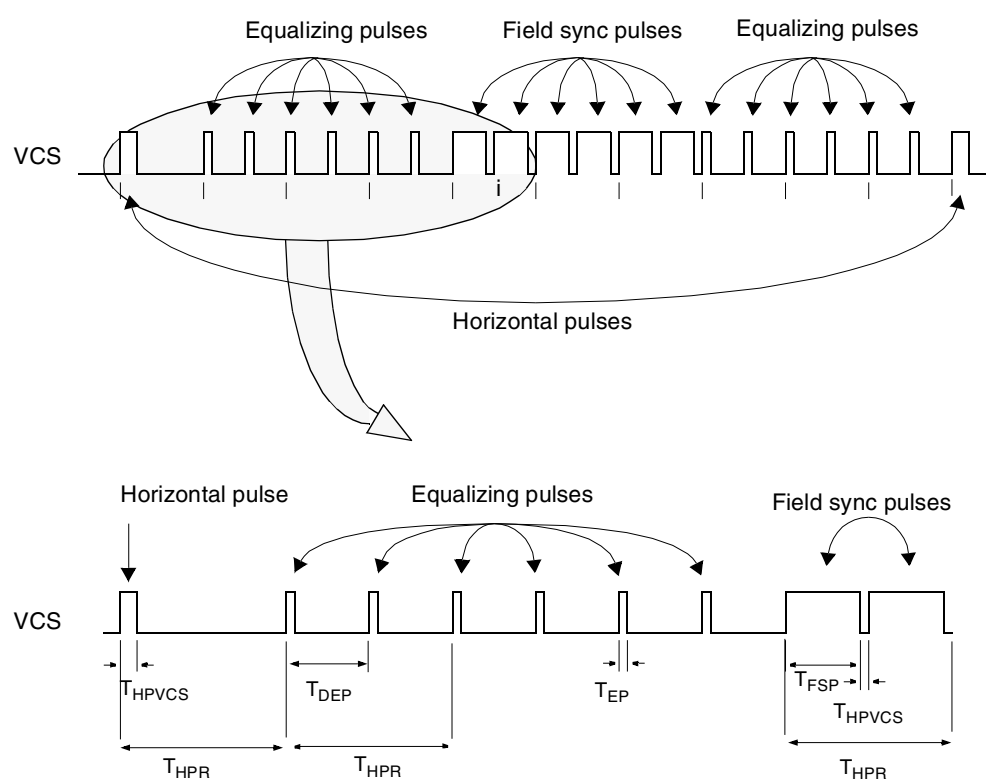
| Parameter  | Symbol           | Limit Values    |                    | Unit | Test Conditions                    |
|--|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|------|------------------------------------|
|  |                  | min.            | max.               |      |                                    |
| A/D Converter Characteristics (Port 2.0 to P2.3) |                  |                 |                    |      |                                    |
| Input Voltage Range                              | V <sub>ain</sub> | V <sub>SS</sub> | V <sub>DD2.5</sub> | V    | –                                  |
| ADC Resolution                                   | RES              | 8               |                    | BIT  | binary                             |
| Output by Underflow                              | –                | 0               |                    | –    | –                                  |
| Output by Overflow                               | –                | 255             |                    | –    | –                                  |
| Bandwidth  | f <sub>B</sub>   | 10.5            |                    | kHz  | –                                  |
| Sampling Time                                    | t <sub>S</sub>   | 2               |                    | μs   | –                                  |
| Sampling Frequency                               | f <sub>SAM</sub> | 21              | –                  | kHz  | –                                  |
| Leakage current                                  | I <sub>I</sub>   | -1              | 1                  | μA   | V <sub>SS</sub> to V <sub>DD</sub> |
| Pin capacitance (Analog Ports)                   | C <sub>P</sub>   | –               | 10                 | pF   | –                                  |
| Reset  |                  |                 |                    |      |                                    |
| Input low voltage                                | V <sub>IL</sub>  | -0.4            | 0.8                | V    | –                                  |
| Input high voltage                               | V <sub>IH</sub>  | 2.0             | 3.6                | V    | –                                  |
| Pull up low current                              | I <sub>IL</sub>  | -250            | -50                | μA   | @ V <sub>IL</sub> max              |
| Pull up high current                             | I <sub>IH</sub>  | -170            | -25                | μA   | @ V <sub>IH</sub> min              |

## 20.4. Timings

### 20.4.1. Sync

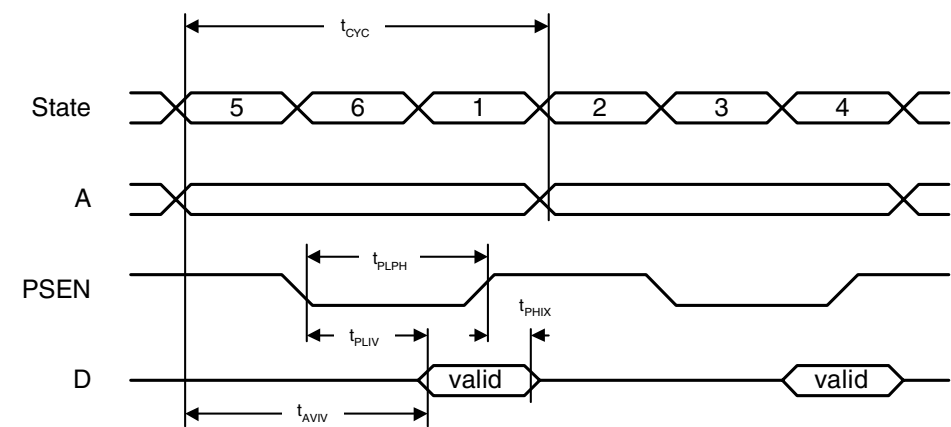


**Fig. 20–1:** H/V - Sync-Timing (Sync-master mode)



**Fig. 20–2:** VCS -Timing (Sync-master mode)

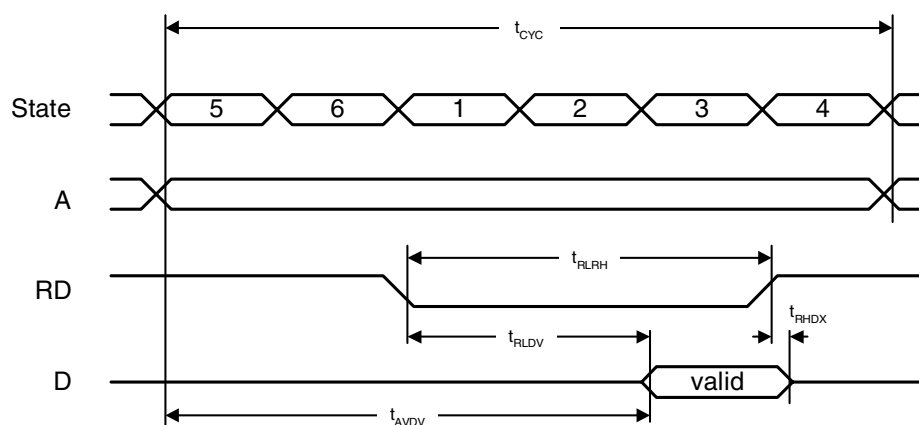
20.4.2.Program Memory Read Cycle



| Parameter                       | Symbol     | min     | max  |
|---------------------------------|------------|---------|------|
| Frequency of internal clock     | $f_{SYS}$  |         |      |
| Instruction read cycle time     | $t_{CYC}$  |         |      |
| PSEN Pulse width                | $t_{PLPH}$ | 80 ns   |      |
| PSEN to valid instruction in    | $t_{PLIV}$ | 57.5 ns |      |
| Instruction hold after PSEN     | $t_{PHIX}$ |         | 0 ns |
| Address to valid instruction in | $t_{AVIV}$ | 115 ns  |      |

Fig. 20–3:

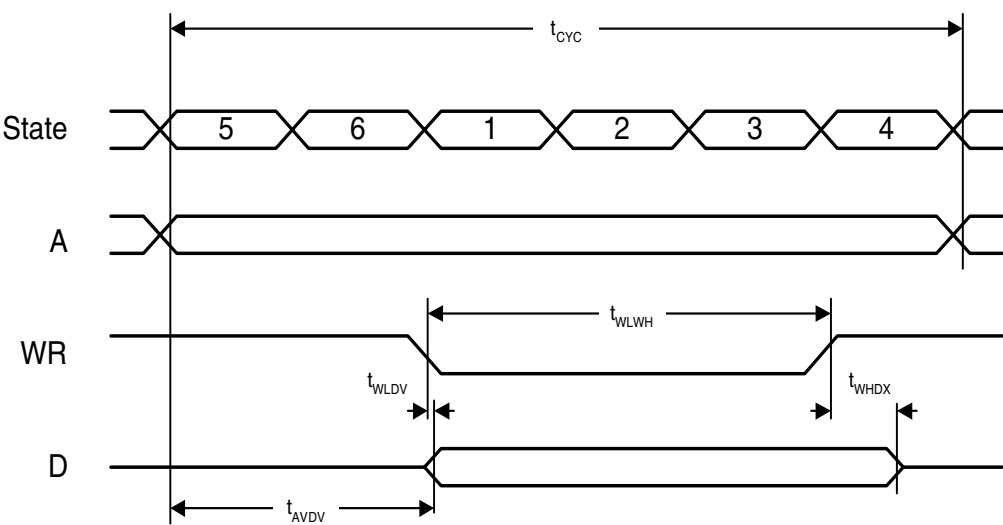
## 20.4.3.Data Memory Read Cycle



| Parameter                   | Symbol            | min      | max  |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------|------|
| Frequency of internal clock | $f_{\text{SYS}}$  |          |      |
| Data read cycle time        | $t_{\text{CYC}}$  |          |      |
| RD Pulse width              | $t_{\text{RLRH}}$ | 170 ns   |      |
| RD to valid data in         | $t_{\text{RLDV}}$ | 117.5 ns |      |
| Data hold after RD          | $t_{\text{RHDX}}$ |          | 0 ns |
| Address to valid data in    | $t_{\text{AVDV}}$ | 230 ns   |      |

Fig. 20–4:

20.4.4.Data Memory Write Cycle



| Parameter                   | Symbol     | min    | max  |
|-----------------------------|------------|--------|------|
| Frequency of internal clock | $f_{SYS}$  |        |      |
| Data write cycle time       | $t_{CYC}$  |        |      |
| WR Pulse width              | $t_{WLVH}$ | 170ns  |      |
| WR to data out              | $t_{WLDV}$ |        | 15ns |
| Data hold after WR          | $t_{WHDV}$ | 12,5ns |      |
| Address to valid data out   | $t_{AVDV}$ |        | 135  |

Fig. 20–5:

## 20.4.5.BLANK/ COR

| Signal range      |  |
|-------------------|--|
| VDD3.3            | contrast reduction <b>don't care</b> ; blank <b>on</b> |
| 2.4V              | undefined  |
| $1/3VDD3.3+150mV$ | contrast reduction <b>on</b> ; blank <b>off</b>        |
| $1/3VDD3.3-150mV$ | undefined  |
| 0.4V              | undefined  |
| VSS3.3            | contrast reduction <b>off</b> ; blank <b>off</b>       |

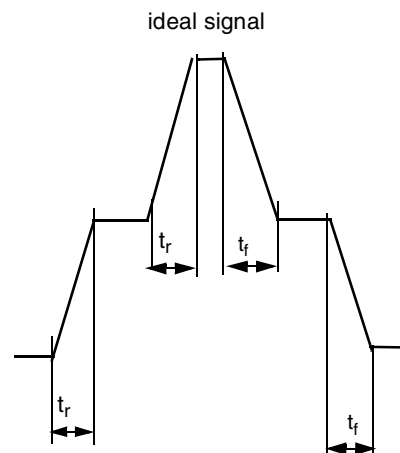


Fig. 20–6:

| Signal range |   |
|--------------|---|
| VDD3.3       | blank <b>on</b> ; contrast reduction <b>don't care</b>  |
| 2.4V         | undefined   |
| 0.4          | undefined   |
| VSS3.3       | blank <b>off</b> , contrast reduction <b>don't care</b> |

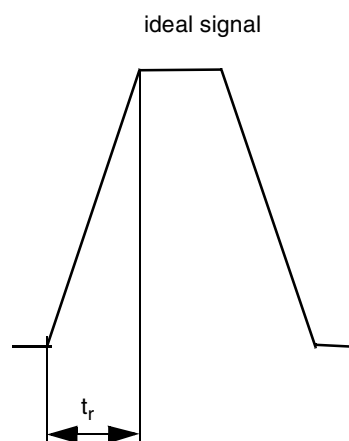


Fig. 20–7:

20.5.Application Diagram

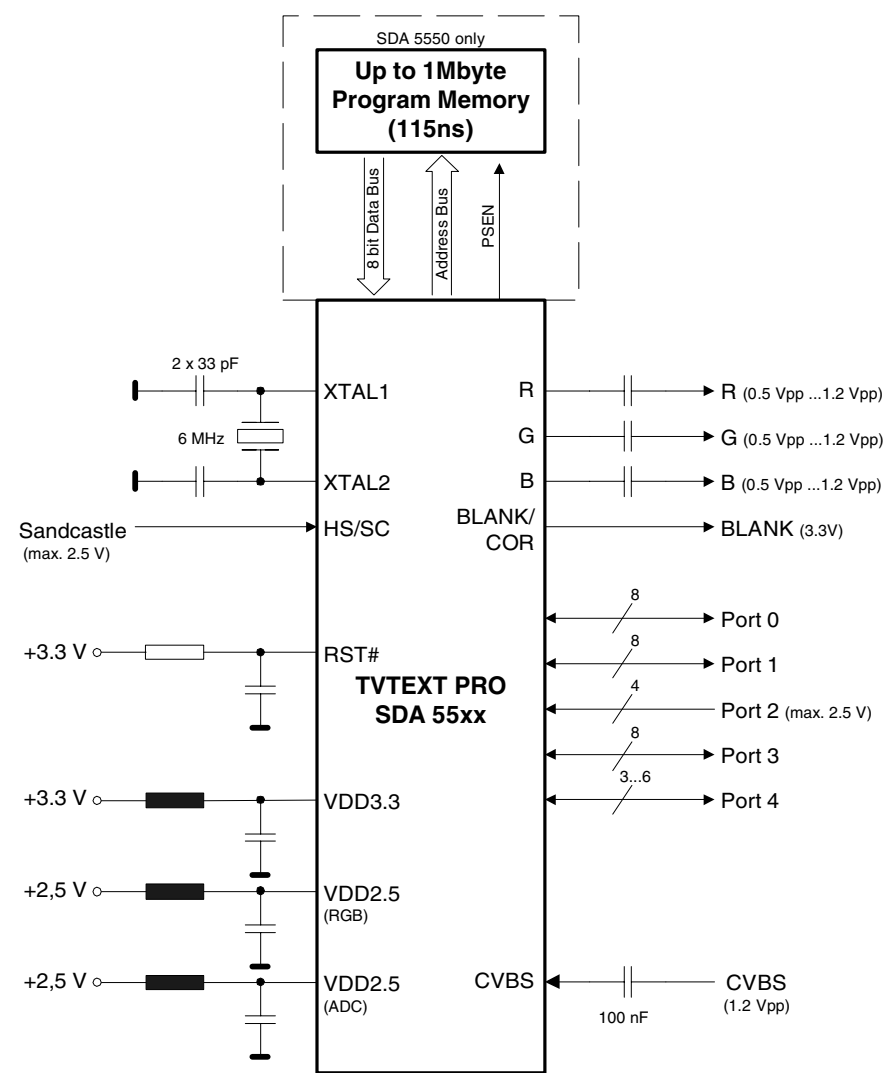
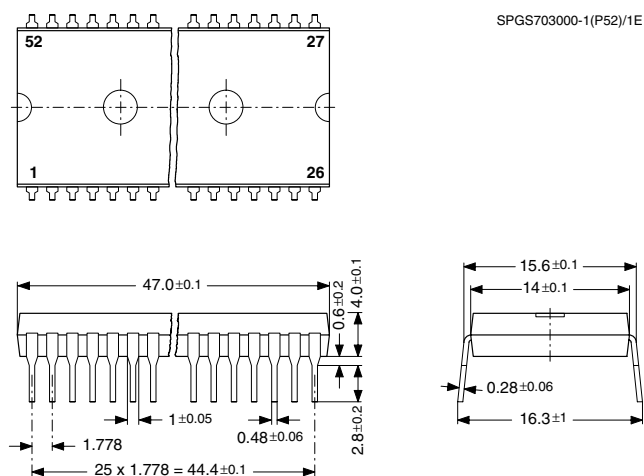


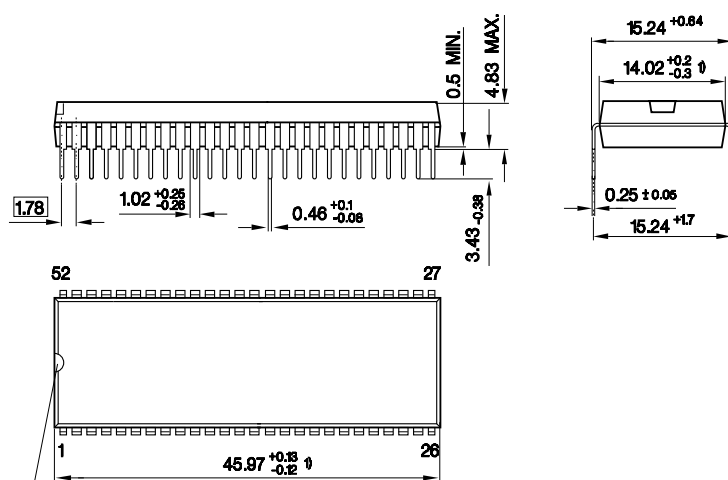
Fig. 20–8:



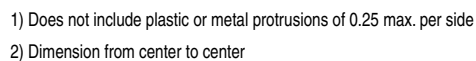
## 20.6.Package Outlines



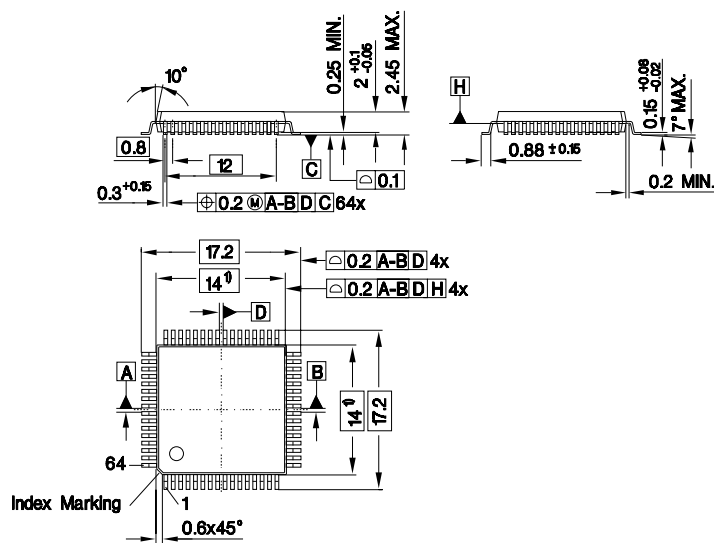
**Fig. 20-9:**  
52-Pin Plastic Shrink Dual Inline Package  
(PSDIP52)  
Weight approximately 5.5 g  
Dimensions in mm



**Fig. 20-10:** PSDIP52-2



186 Micronas



1) Does not include plastic or metal protrusion of 0.25 max. per side

**Fig. 20–13: PMQFP64-1**

## 21. List of Changes since last Edition

- Whole Document: IE0, IE1, IE2, IE3 have been changed to IEN0, IEN1, IEN2, IEN3.
- Whole Document: Symbol “COR\_BLA” has been changed to “BLANK/COR”.
- Fig. 1–2 on Page 11 has been changed.
- Fig. 1–3 on Page 12 has been changed.
- Page 13, last row: Note has been added.
- Page 17: Symbol “ $\overline{\text{EXTIF}}$ ” has been added to table.
- Fig. 2–2 on Page 20 has been changed completely.
- Fig. 2–3 on Page 21 has been changed completely.
- Fig. 7–1 on Page 69 has been changed.
- Page 111: Description of “ADWULE(4)” has been changed.
- Page 174, Section 20.3.: Data of “Output high Voltage” has been changed.
- Page 174, Section 20.3.: Data of “Pull up low Current” has been changed.
- Page 174, Section 20.3.: Data of “Pull up high Current” has been changed.
- Page 175, Section 20.3.: Data of “RGB offset” has been changed.
- Page 176, v: Data of “Input Hysteresis 1” has been changed.
- Page 176, Section 20.3.: Data of “Input Hysteresis 2” has been changed.
- Page 176, Section 20.3.: Row “Input low Voltage” has been added.
- Page 176, Section 20.3.: Row “Input high Voltage” has been added.
- Page 177, Section 20.3.: Min. Value of “Input low Voltage” has been changed.
- Page 177, Section 20.3.: Data of “Input high Voltage” has been changed.
- Page 178, Section 20.3.: Max. Value of “Pull up low Current” has been changed.
- Page 178, Section 20.3.: Data of “Pull up high Current” has been changed.
- Fig. 20–3 on Page 180 has been changed.
- Fig. 20–4 on Page 181 has been changed.
- Fig. 20–8 on Page 184 has been changed.

## 22. Data Sheet History

1. Final data sheet: "SDA 55xx TVText Pro, July 27, 2001", 6251-556-1DS. First release of the final data sheet.

Micronas GmbH  
Hans-Bunte-Strasse 19  
D-79108 Freiburg (Germany)  
P.O. Box 840  
D-79008 Freiburg (Germany)  
Tel. +49-761-517-0  
Fax +49-761-517-2174  
E-mail: [docservice@micronas.com](mailto:docservice@micronas.com)  
Internet: [www.micronas.com](http://www.micronas.com)

Printed in Germany  
Order No. 6251-556-1DS

All information and data contained in this data sheet are without any commitment, are not to be considered as an offer for conclusion of a contract, nor shall they be construed as to create any liability. Any new issue of this data sheet invalidates previous issues. Product availability and delivery are exclusively subject to our respective order confirmation form; the same applies to orders based on development samples delivered. By this publication, Micronas GmbH does not assume responsibility for patent infringements or other rights of third parties which may result from its use.

Further, Micronas GmbH reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of Micronas GmbH.